

UNIT 1: MY NEW SCHOOL

A. VOCABULARY

- art /a:t/ (n): nghệ thuật
- boarding school /'bɔ:ɪ.dɪŋ ,sku:l/ (n): trường nội trú
- classmate /'klæs.meɪt/ (n): bạn học
- equipment /'kwɪp mənt/ : (n) thiết bị
- greenhouse /'ɡri:n.haʊs/ (n): nhà kính
- judo /'dʒu:.doʊ/ (n): môn võ judo
- swimming pool /'swɪm.ɪŋ ,pu:l/ (n): hồ bơi
- pencil sharpener /'pen.səl ʃɑ:pə.nər/ (n): đồ chuốt bút chì
- compass /'kʌm.pəs/ (n): com-pa
- school bag /'sku:l.bæg/ (n): cặp đi học
- rubber /'rʌb.ər/ (n): cục tẩy
- calculator /'kæl.kjə.leɪ.tər/ (n): máy tính
- pencil case /'pen.səl ,keɪs/ (n): hộp bút
- notebook /'noʊt.bʊk/ (n): vở
- bicycle /'baɪ.sɪ.kəl/ (n): xe đạp
- ruler /'ru.lər/ (n): thước
- textbook /'tekst.bʊk/ (n): sách giáo khoa
- activity /æk'tɪv.ɪ.ti/ (n): hoạt động
- Creative /kri'eɪ.tɪv/ (adj): sáng tạo
- excited /ɪk'saɪ.tɪd/ (adj): phấn chấn, phấn khích
- help /hɛlp/ (n, v): giúp đỡ, trợ giúp
- international /,ɪn.tər'næʃ.əl/ (adj): quốc tế

- interview /'ɪn.təˌvju/ (n, v): phỏng vấn
- knock /nɒ:k/ (v): gõ (cửa)
- overseas /'oʊ.vər'sɪz/ (n, adj) (ở): nước ngoài
- pocket money /'pɒː.kɪt ˌmʌn.i/ (n): tiền túi, tiền riêng
- poem /'poʊ.əm/ (n): bài thơ
- remember /rɪ'mem.bər/ (v): nhớ, ghi nhớ
- share /ʃer/ (n, v): chia sẻ
- smart /smɑːrt/ (adj): bảnh bao, sáng sủa, thông minh
- surround /sə'rʌʊnd/ (v): bao quanh

B. GRAMMAR

I. THE PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE (Thì hiện tại đơn)

1. CÁCH DÙNG CỦA THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN

a. Diễn tả những hành động xảy ra lặp đi lặp lại hàng ngày.

Ví dụ: We go to the cinema every weekend. (*Chúng tôi đi xem phim vào mỗi ngày cuối tuần.*)

b. Miêu tả lịch trình, chương trình hay thời gian biểu (ngụ ý tương lai)

Ví dụ: Oh no! The train leaves at 5 pm. (*Ôi không! Tàu sẽ rời đi lúc 5 giờ*)

The cartoon starts at 7:45 p.m. (*Bộ phim hoạt hình bắt đầu lúc 7:45 tối*)

c. Miêu tả thực tế hay một sự thực hiển nhiên.

Ví dụ: She works as a nurse. (*Cô ấy là một y tá*)

The sun rises in the east. (*Mặt trời mọc ở đằng đông*)

d. Miêu tả các trạng thái ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: I am thirsty. (*Tôi khát*)

I am not happy. (*Tôi không vui*)

2. DẠNG THỨC CỦA THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN

a. Với động từ to be

* Dạng khẳng định:

S + is/ are/ am..

S + is/ am/ are + not

Is/ am/ are + s +?

b. Với động từ thường:

Câu hỏi:

(+) S + V/ V_{s/es} +

(-) S + Do/ does + not + V-infinitive

(?) Do/ does + S + V-infinitive

Trả lời: Yes, S + do/ does. hoặc No, S + don't/ doesn't.

3. ĐUÔI "S/ ES" CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ TRONG THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN

a. Quy tắc thêm đuôi s/ es

- Động từ không có dấu hiệu đặc biệt: Thêm -s vào sau động từ

Ví dụ: get - gets, take - takes

- Động từ kết thúc bằng các chữ cái -ss, -sh, -ch, -x, -o: Thêm -es

Ví dụ: miss - misses, wash - washes, watch - watches, mix - mixes, do - does

- Động từ kết thúc bằng một phụ âm và -y: Bỏ -y và thêm -ies

Ví dụ: study - studies

- Động từ kết thúc bằng một nguyên âm và -y: Thêm -s vào sau động từ

Ví dụ: play - plays

b. Cách phát âm đuôi s và es

- Phát âm là /s/ khi âm tận cùng của động từ nguyên thể là /p/, /t/, /k/, /f/

Ví dụ: stops , spots , looks , laughs

- Phát âm là /ɪz/ khi âm tận cùng của động từ nguyên thể là /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/

Ví dụ: misses , rises, washes , watches , judges

- Phát âm là /z/ khi âm tận cùng của động từ nguyên thể là các âm còn lại

Ví dụ: cleans , plays , clears , rides , comes

4. CÁC TRẠNG TỪ/ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ THỜI GIAN TRONG THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN

a. Các trạng từ chỉ tần suất

Các trạng từ chỉ tần suất: always, usually, often, sometimes, hardly, rarely, seldom, never chỉ tần suất giảm dần. Trong câu, những trạng từ này đứng sau động từ “to be” và đứng trước động từ thường.

Ví dụ: Peter is always late for school. (*Peter luôn đi học muộn*)

Peter always goes to school late. (*Peter luôn đi học muộn*)

b. Các trạng từ/ trạng ngữ khác

Một số trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian bắt đầu bằng **every** (**every day, every Sunday**), **each** (**each day, each Sunday**) và **in the** + **buổi trong ngày** (**in the morning, in the afternoon**).

Những trạng từ này đứng đầu hoặc đứng cuối câu.

Ví dụ:

Every day Peter goes to school late. (*Ngày nào Peter cũng đi học muộn.*)

Peter doesn't get up early in the morning. (*Peter không thức dậy sớm vào buổi sáng.*)

II. THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE (Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn)

1. Cấu trúc

Câu khẳng định	S + is/ am/ are + V-ing
Câu phủ định	S + isn't/ am not/ aren't + V-ing
Câu hỏi	Is/ Am/ Are + S + V-ing?

2. Sự kết hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ tobe

I	am
You	are
We	
They	
He	is
She	
It	
N	is
Ns	are

3. Cách dùng chính

- ✓ Dùng để diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm hiện nói hoặc xung quanh thời điểm nói.

Ví dụ:

I am watching a film now.

(*Tôi đang xem phim - hành động xem phim diễn ra ngay tại thời điểm nói*)

I am writing an essay these days.

(*Thời gian này tôi viết một bài luận - chủ thể của hành động đọc không nhất thiết phải viết bài luận ngay trong lúc nói chuyện*)

- ✓ Diễn tả một sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai theo một kế hoạch đã được lên lịch cố định (thay thế cho tương lai gần), đặc biệt là trong văn nói.

Ví dụ:

I am going to the theatre tonight.

(Tôi nay tôi sẽ đến rạp hát - hành động đến rạp hát đang chuẩn bị diễn ra)

I bought the ticket yesterday. I am flying to New York tomorrow.

Ta thấy có căn cứ, kế hoạch rõ ràng (tôi đã mua vé máy bay) nên ta sử dụng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về một việc chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

- ✓ Diễn tả sự không hài lòng hay phàn nàn về việc gì trong câu sử dụng "always".

Ví dụ:

He is always coming late. *(Anh ta toàn đến muộn.)*

Why are you always putting your dirty clothes on your bed? *(Sao lúc nào con cũng để quần áo bẩn trên giường thế hả?)*

4. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

Trong câu thường có các trạng từ sau: **now, right now, at the moment, at present,...**

Trong câu có các động từ như:

- Look! (Nhìn kia!)
- Listen! (Hãy nghe này!)
- Keep silent! (Hãy im lặng)

Ví dụ:

Look! The tram is coming. *(Nhìn kia! Tàu đang đến.)*

Listen! Someone is crying. *(Nghe này! Ai đó đang khóc.)*

Keep silent! The baby is sleeping. *(Hãy im lặng! Em bé đang ngủ.)*

5. Lưu ý

- ✓ Các động từ trạng thái ở bảng sau không được chia ở thể tiếp diễn (bất cứ thời nào) khi chúng là những động từ tĩnh diễn đạt trạng thái cảm giác của hoạt động tinh thần hoặc tính chất của sự vật, sự việc.

know	understand	have
believe	hate	need
hear	love	appear
see	like	seem
smell	want	taste
wish	sound	own

- ✓ Nhưng khi chúng là động từ hành động thì chúng lại được phép dùng ở thể tiếp diễn.

Ví dụ:

She has a lot of dolls. (~~She is having a lot of dolls~~)

– Tuy nhiên, có thể:

She is having his lunch. (Cô ấy *ĐANG* ăn trưa -hành động ăn đang diễn ra)

6. Quy tắc thêm sau động từ

Thông thường ta chỉ cần thêm "-ing" vào sau động từ. Nhưng có một số chú ý như sau:

○ Với động từ tận cùng là MỘT chữ "e":

– Ta bỏ "e" rồi thêm "-ing".

Ví dụ:

write - writing; type - typing; come – coming

○ Tận cùng là HAI CHỮ "e" takhông bỏ "e" mà vẫn thêm "-ing" bình thường.

○ Với động từ có MỘT âm tiết, tận cùng là MỘT PHỤ ÂM, trước là MỘT NGUYÊN ÂM

– Ta nhân đôi phụ âm cuối rồi thêm "-ing".

Ví dụ:

stop - stopping; get - getting; put - putting

• CHÚ Ý:

– Các trường hợp ngoại lệ:

begin - beginning;

travel - travelling

prefer - preferring;

permit - permitting

○ Với động từ tận cùng là "ie":

– Ta đổi "ie" thành "y" rồi thêm "-ing".

Ví dụ:

lie - lying; die - dying

C. PRACTICE

PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>c</u> over | B. g <u>o</u> | C. fl <u>o</u> w | D. s <u>o</u> |
| 2. A. fl <u>o</u> w | B. l <u>o</u> ve | C. st <u>o</u> ne | D. N <u>o</u> vember |
| 3. A. s <u>u</u> mm <u>er</u> | B. s <u>u</u> n | C. gl <u>u</u> e | D. sh <u>u</u> t |
| 4. A. sl <u>o</u> wly | B. f <u>o</u> am | C. c <u>o</u> ver | D. h <u>o</u> me |
| 5. A. bl <u>o</u> od | B. sh <u>o</u> ot | C. sh <u>u</u> t | D. fl <u>o</u> od |
| 6. A. m <u>o</u> ney | B. s <u>o</u> rry | C. m <u>o</u> rning | D. st <u>o</u> ry |
| 7. A. n <u>o</u> w | B. gr <u>o</u> w | C. d <u>o</u> wn | D. t <u>o</u> wn |

8. A. <u>study</u>	B. <u>student</u>	C. <u>studio</u>	D. <u>stupid</u>
9. A. <u>house</u>	B. <u>about</u>	C. <u>hour</u>	D. <u>country</u>
10. A. <u>lunch</u>	B. <u>fun</u>	C. <u>judo</u>	D. <u>sun</u>
11. A. <u>uniform</u>	B. <u>computer</u>	C. <u>student</u>	D. <u>judo</u>
12. A. <u>subject</u>	B. <u>sure</u>	C. <u>surround</u>	D. <u>see</u>
13. A. <u>excited</u>	B. <u>nice</u>	C. <u>library</u>	D. <u>living</u>
14. A. <u>school</u>	B. <u>teacher</u>	C. <u>cheap</u>	D. <u>watching</u>
15. A. <u>teach</u>	B. <u>speak</u>	C. <u>break</u>	D. <u>read</u>
16. A. <u>flat</u>	B. <u>hat</u>	C. <u>many</u>	D. <u>gas</u>
17. A. <u>missed</u>	B. <u>called</u>	C. <u>explained</u>	D. <u>planned</u>
18. A. <u>choir</u>	B. <u>chocolate</u>	C. <u>chore</u>	D. <u>chin</u>
19. A. <u>sorry</u>	B. <u>physics</u>	C. <u>size</u>	D. <u>singer</u>
20. A. <u>fun</u>	B. <u>student</u>	C. <u>hungry</u>	D. <u>sun</u>
21. A. <u>subject</u>	B. <u>club</u>	C. <u>put</u>	D. <u>lunch</u>
22. A. <u>but</u>	B. <u>lunch</u>	C. <u>student</u>	D. <u>up</u>
23. A. <u>day</u>	B. <u>lake</u>	C. <u>tall</u>	D. <u>plane</u>
24. A. <u>restaurant</u>	B. <u>river</u>	C. <u>well</u>	D. <u>left</u>
25. A. <u>office</u>	B. <u>behind</u>	C. <u>clinic</u>	D. <u>picture</u>
26. A. <u>activity</u>	B. <u>compass</u>	C. <u>thank</u>	D. <u>have</u>
27. A. <u>come</u>	B. <u>someone</u>	C. <u>brother</u>	D. <u>volleyball</u>
28. A. <u>lunch</u>	B. <u>computer</u>	C. <u>calculator</u>	D. <u>uniform</u>
29. A. <u>picture</u>	B. <u>minute</u>	C. <u>bicycle</u>	D. <u>listen</u>
30. A. <u>repeat</u>	B. <u>wearing</u>	C. <u>teacher</u>	D. <u>meat</u>
31. A. <u>come</u>	B. <u>month</u>	C. <u>mother</u>	D. <u>open</u>
32. A. <u>brother</u>	B. <u>judo</u>	C. <u>going</u>	D. <u>rode</u>
33. A. <u>come</u>	B. <u>poem</u>	C. <u>going</u>	D. <u>follow</u>
34. A. <u>other</u>	B. <u>Monday</u>	C. <u>brother</u>	D. <u>closer</u>
35. A. <u>judo</u>	B. <u>mother</u>	C. <u>open</u>	D. <u>postcard</u>
36. A. <u>school</u>	B. <u>teaching</u>	C. <u>chess</u>	D. <u>chalk</u>
37. A. <u>wonderful</u>	B. <u>ago</u>	C. <u>show</u>	D. <u>go</u>
38. A. <u>come</u>	B. <u>someone</u>	C. <u>brother</u>	D. <u>volleyball</u>
39. A. <u>lunch</u>	B. <u>computer</u>	C. <u>calculator</u>	D. <u>uniform</u>
40. A. <u>funny</u>	B. <u>lunch</u>	C. <u>sun</u>	D. <u>computer</u>
41. A. <u>other</u>	B. <u>among</u>	C. <u>potato</u>	D. <u>nothing</u>
42. A. <u>activity</u>	B. <u>compass</u>	C. <u>thank</u>	D. <u>have</u>
43. A. <u>group</u>	B. <u>should</u>	C. <u>soup</u>	D. <u>pour</u>
44. A. <u>window</u>	B. <u>nothing</u>	C. <u>bowl</u>	D. <u>grow</u>
45. A. <u>true</u>	B. <u>luck</u>	C. <u>Sunday</u>	D. <u>uncle</u>

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 46. A. <u>h</u> omework | B. ju <u>d</u> o | C. <u>c</u> ompass | D. <u>o</u> verseas |
| 47. A. sh <u>o</u> w | B. sn <u>o</u> w | C. bo <u>w</u> l | D. n <u>o</u> w |
| 48. A. n <u>o</u> tebook | B. l <u>o</u> ve | C. ab <u>o</u> ve | D. M <u>o</u> nday |
| 49. A. activ <u>i</u> ty | B. creat <u>i</u> ve | C. contin <u>u</u> ous | D. internat <u>i</u> onal |
| 50. A. surr <u>o</u> und | B. coun <u>t</u> ing | C. coun <u>t</u> ry | D. ab <u>o</u> ut |

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. greenhouse | B. compass | C. surround | D. classmate |
| 2. A. boarding | B. judo | C. pocket | D. replace |
| 3. A. delay | B. swimming | C. money | D. compass |
| 4. A. creative | B. interview | C. equipment | D. remember |
| 5. A. overseas | B. beautiful | C. difficult | D. miracle |
| 6. A. behind | B. cupboard | C. kitchen | D. boring |
| 7. A. backpack | B. quiet | C. feather | D. pollute |
| 8. A. rubbish | B. dislike | C. money | D. lucky |
| 9. A. bathroom | B. messy | C. backyard | D. modern |
| 10. A. cuisine | B. valley | C. pollute | D. dislike |
| 11. A. ready | B. about | C. heavy | D. borrow |
| 12. A. forgot | B. early | C. physics | D. lesson |
| 13. A. uniform | B. exercise | C. bicycle | D. excited |
| 14. A. canteen | B. healthy | C. rubber | D. textbook |
| 15. A. evening | B. badminton | C. already | D. favourite |

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- I sometimes _____ to the cinema.
A. go B. goes C. going D. to go
- John _____ much better now.
A. feel B. feels C. feeling D. is feeling
- I _____ football every weekend.
A. study B. have C. play D. do
- She _____ English at the moment.
A. study B. is studying C. studies D. studying
- She is _____ hard for her A levels.
A. having B. playing C. studying D. doing
- I always _____ a cooked breakfast.
A. have B. do C. play D. study

7. She _____ to be an architect.
A. study B. studies C. studying D. is studying
8. I _____ a one-hour lunch break.
A. play B. have C. do D. study
9. I'm _____ physics, biology and chemistry.
A. playing B. having C. doing D. going
10. Do you want to _____ cards with me?
A. play B. come C. have D. learn
11. Listening to music is one of the most popular leisure _____.
A. kindergarten B. activities C. hobby D. equipments
12. My son is just 2 years old and he is in _____ now.
A. kindergarten B. overseas C. high school D. secondary school
13. I don't like to _____ money from friends.
A. pay B. knock C. borrow D. help
14. We only have time for a snack at _____.
A. lunch B. gym C. meals D. break time
15. Do you know where our new _____ is? Our teacher wants to meet him.
A. poem B. classmate C. swimming pool D. gym
16. In order to keep _____, you should eat well and exercise regularly.
A. warm B. excited C. healthy D. quiet
17. My sister always has a lot of new ideas. She's a _____ person.
A. creative B. hard-working C. quiet D. healthy
18. Don't go climbing without the necessary _____.
A. uniform B. pocket money C. equipment D. share
19. Today is my son's first day at school so he is very _____.
A. creative B. excited C. worry D. interesting
20. It's impolite to go into someone's room without _____.
A. riding B. playing C. knocking D. sharing
21. Peter _____ an accident yesterday when he crossed the street.
A. studied B. had C. played D. did
22. James is _____ judo in the playground with his friends.
A. studying B. doing C. playing D. have
23. Linh _____ a headache so she is sleeping in her bedroom.
A. does B. plays C. studying D. has
24. My dad is _____ a cup of coffee with his colleague in the living room now.
A. plays B. study C. doing D. having
25. Williams always _____ breakfast with bread, egg and milk before coming to school.
A. has B. plays C. studies D. does

26. Nick and Rosy usually help their mom _____ the chores at the weekend.
A. study B. do C. playing D. have
27. He often _____ English vocabulary every morning.
A. doing B. having C. studies D. plays
28. Phong _____ basketball with his younger brother three times a week.
A. does B. has C. plays D. study
29. Emily sometimes _____ a chat with her pen friend in England.
A. does B. has C. studies D. plays
30. Jane is _____ History at the moment to prepare for the final exam.
A. studying B. doing C. playing D. has
31. You must _____ her report carefully before making a decision.
A. do B. study C. play D. have
32. I can sing but I can't _____ the flute.
A. play B. do C. study D. have
33. How is your first week _____ school?
A. on B. at C. for D. to
34. My brother often helps me _____ my homework.
A. at B. about C. for D. with
35. Megan is _____ badminton with her friends in the schoolyard.
A. having B. studying C. playing D. doing
36. The villa is _____ by pine trees.
A. surrounded B. built C. covered D. grounded
37. We do _____ in the gym every afternoon.
A. table tennis B. football C. judo D. homework
38. _____ does Jane have science? ~ On Monday and Friday.
A. Where B. What C. When D. What time
39. Nowadays, students often use _____ in mathematics lessons.
A. rubbers B. calculators C. pencils D. dictionaries
40. My cousin goes to a _____ school, so she only comes home at weekends.
A. boarding B. private C. public D. international
41. You look really _____ in your new uniform!
A. excited B. smart C. healthy D. interesting
42. _____ your parents give you pocket money?
A. Is B. Are C. Do D. Does
43. In many schools in Vietnam students have to wear a _____.
A. clothing B. suit C. uniform D. coat
44. Trung: "Why do you think most people learn English?"
Phong: " _____ "

- [illegible]

3. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. He is certainly the finestin Hollywood today. | (ACT) |
| 2. He is a serious, and totally committed to his work. | (ART) |
| 3. She's very on the design front. | (CREATE) |
| 4. No special is needed. | (EQUIP) |
| 5. I still find the job | (EXCITE) |
| 6. They are afraid of losing their identity. | (NATION) |
| 7. rarely ask about his personal life. | (INTERVIEW) |
| 8. He's the of a successful cartoon series. | (CREATE) |
| 9. There is increased volcanic in the region. | (ACT) |
| 10. She's the highest-paid in Hollywood. | (ACT) |
| 11. History is an subject. | (INTEREST) |
| 12. They have in finding a suitable apartment. | (DIFFICULT) |
| 13. The company has only 60 | (EMPLOY) |
| 14. The way to travel is by plane. | (FAST) |
| 15. Her English is than mine. | (GOOD) |
| 16. What a party! I'd like go to home. | (BORE) |
| 17. Few students like him. He is an teacher. | (POPULAR) |
| 18. Some people play sport to be _____, not because they like it. | (HEALTH) |
| 19. My aunt works as a _____ at a university. | (CHEMISTRY) |

20. Students of our school are _____ with one another. (FRIEND)
21. The _____ of the experiment is 20 minutes. (LONG)
22. Be _____! The ground is very wet and slippery. (CARE)
23. When foreigners talk to him, he can speak English _____ with them. (EASY)
24. I like the fried chicken in our school canteen: it's really _____. (TASTE)
25. Sometimes we are bored and _____ with his long lectures. (SLEEP)

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text.

Dear Lena,

How are you? I want to tell you about our school tradition. Birthday is a (1. **WONDER**) _____ holiday for everybody, isn't it? Every month, we celebrate birthdays of our classmates. We organize birthday parties for them. First, we decorate our classroom. Then we think of the sincere (2. **CONGRATULATE**) _____ for our classmates. I want to tell you about the last (3. **CELEBRATE**) _____. That time we organized funny (4. **COMPLETE**) _____. We recited poems and sang songs. We baked a big and (5. **TASTE**) _____ cake. All were happy. I liked disco most of all. Tell me more about your school traditions.

Good bye! I'm looking forward to (6. **HEAR**) _____ from you soon.

Yours truly,

Alex

4. VERB FORMS

I. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form

1. She (**walk**) _____ to school every morning.
2. They (**learn**) _____ how to use the lawnmower in the garden.
3. Linda (**go**) _____ to the supermarket to buy some sugar.
4. Sometimes I (**feel**) _____ really lazy to do anything.
5. Phong and I (**study**) _____ English in my room.
6. I often (**have**) _____ breakfast at 7 A. m at home.
7. She (**do**) _____ aerobics every morning to keep fit.
8. Nga (**like**) _____ playing basketball very much.
9. What time you (**have**) _____ lunch every day?
10. She (**not have**) _____ any pen, so I lend her one.

II. Fill in the blank with correct forms of a suitable verbs (study, have, do, play) to complete the following sentences.

1. He is _____ hard at the moment
2. They _____ a beautiful home.

3. You can take the documents home and _____ them at your leisure.
4. He _____ plenty of money but no style.
5. Jane _____ the guitar and her brother is on percussion.
6. Nga is _____ to be an architect.
7. Can I _____ a drink of water?
8. Diane is _____ anthropology at university.
9. I can't go out tonight – I've got to _____ my history paper.
10. Which team do you _____ for?

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form

1. The plane (**fly**) _____ to London every Monday.
2. Marc (**make**) _____ pizza now.
3. Rose (**read**) _____ a book.
4. First I (**get**) _____ up, then I (**have**) _____ breakfast.
5. Why it always (**rain**) _____ in Germany?
6. She (**understand**) _____ English.
7. My friend often (**draw**) _____ nice posters.
8. Why you always (**criticize**) _____ me?
9. You can go outside now. It (**not rain**) _____ any more.
10. The sun (**rise**) _____ in the east.

IV. Put the verbs into the correct form. Use Present Simple.

1. They _____ (**play**) football and basketball at school.
2. My father _____ (**read**) the newspaper every morning.
3. We _____ (**have**) English, Maths and Science on Monday.
4. She never _____ (**do**) her homework.
5. I _____ (**go**) swimming twice a week.
6. Cars _____ (**be**) more expensive than motorbikes.
7. Jane always _____ (**have**) breakfast at 6 o'clock.
8. He usually _____ (**watch**) TV after dinner.
9. London _____ (**be**) a very big country.
10. I _____ (**be**) a student and my parents _____ (**be**) teachers.

5. CORRECTION

I. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence.

1. What time does Mai has English class?
 A B C D
2. Do you often go at school library when you have free time?

A B C D

3. She cleans the floor every morning. She cleans it now.

A B C D

4. When time do you usually get up every day?

A B C D

5. Does your mother and Mrs. Lanh work here? Yes, they do.

A B C D

6. How many child does she have? Two sons and two daughters.

A B C D

7. John are cleaning the room at the moment

A B C D

8. I swim usually at the weekend

A B C D

9. I and Lan rides a bike to school everyday

A B C D

10. My mom don't usually go to work on Saturday

A B C D

11. My father works at the moment.

A B C D

12. I am often playing football on Saturdays.

A B C D

13. She is wanting to buy a new computer.

A B C D

14. My children doesn't like reading.

A B C D

15. We have breakfast now.

A B C D

16. The girls are skip on the playground.

A B C D

17. Ann gets up at 6 o'clock and is having breakfast every day.

A B C D

18. I'm sorry I don't have time. I cook dinner.

A B C D

19. I can see that there is a vase behind of the light.

A B C D

20. We don't stay up late in night.

A B C D

II. Read the text and find 10 mistakes then correct them.

Example: *live* → *lives*

Miss Lien live in a small house on Hanoi. She teaches English at a school there. She usually is breakfast in seven in the morning and she has dinner at twelve o'clock in the canteen of the school. She teaches his students in the morning. She teaches them dialogues on Wednesdays to Fridays. On Mondays, she teach them grammar. On the evening, she usually stays at home and listens books. She sometimes goes to the movie theatre. She always go to bed at ten o'clock.

ANSWERS

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
6.	7.	8.	9.	10.

6. READING

I. Read the following text and decide which answer best fits each numbered blank.

Our teacher always motivates us to take (1) _____ in the sports activity, quiz competitions, oral and written activities, debates, scouting, group discussion and (2) _____ activities in the school. Our class teacher teaches us (3) _____ discipline of the school and keeps the school compound clean (4) _____ tidy. Our principal (5) _____ us motivational messages daily on the stage of prayer. We learn (6) _____ honest, truthful, obedient and sincere in our whole life. We learn _____ how to concentrate (7) _____ the study in the class room. Our school organizes a quiz competition, dance competition and sports competition annually which is compulsory for (8) _____ to participate.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. piece | B. part | C. sort | D. type |
| 2. A. same | B. similar | C. another | D. other |
| 3. A. to maintain | B. maintain | C. maintains | D. maintaining |
| 4. A. what | B. if | C. and | D. or |
| 5. A. tell | B. tells | C. told | D. telling |
| 6. A. be | B. being | C. to be | D. been |
| 7. A. on | B. at | C. in | D. to |
| 8. A. we | B. our | C. ours | D. us |

II. Read the following text and use the words given in the box to fill in the blanks.

all	Actual	your	idea
-----	--------	------	------

for	Forward	and	score
------------	----------------	------------	--------------

On the first day of school, the secret to success is in the planning, not the pedagogy. How's (1) _____ back-to-school planning going? Have you forgotten anything? Our checklist can help! Included: Online resources (2) _____ a variety of back-to-school planning needs, including welcome letters, bulletin board ideas, (3) _____ back-to-school activities.

It's official. You're a teacher! You aced (4) _____ your education courses, know the subject matter backward and (5) _____, can rattle off the names and philosophies of dozens of educational theorists, and achieved a pretty respectable (6) _____ on the state certification exam. You finally have an (7) _____ job and an official class list. There's only one problem. The first day of school is drawing near and you have no (8) _____ want to do. Are you really ready to face that first terrifying day?

III. Read the following text and answer the questions below

One of the reasons you may have identified for underperforming is that you're not taking good enough notes. Hurriedly scrawled notes from class can be difficult to make sense of when you come to revise from them, or even to write an essay based on them. It's all too easy to misunderstand your own notes and fail to get a strong enough grasp of the topic. It's imperative, therefore, that you produce good notes from each of your classes and from the books you use – notes that you can read, that are useful, and that are logically organized. If you make notes by hand- in class, for example – try to type them up at the end of the day, while they're still fresh in your mind.

1. What is the one of the reasons for underperforming?

.....

2. What are problems of Hurriedly scrawled notes?

.....

3. What is the problem when misunderstanding your own notes?

.....

4. Why are good notes from each of your classes and from the books important?

.....

5. What should be done after making notes by hand?

.....

IV. Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Chu Van An High School, also known as Chu Van An National School or Pomelo School, is one of the three provincial public magnet high schools in Hanoi, Vietnam, along with Hanoi-Amsterdam High School and Nguyen Hue High School. Established by French authorities in 1908 as High School of Protectorate, this is one of the oldest institutions for secondary education in Indochina. Despite the initial purpose of the French government for this school which was training native civil servant to serve in their colonial establishments, Vietnamese students at Buoi school, common name of the school, had many times struggled against colonial doctrine and the ruling power. With that patriotic and hard-working traditions, a lot of Buoi alumni became important figures in many area of Vietnam society such as the revolutionary Pham Van Dong, doctor Ton That Tung or poet Xuan Dieu

1. Who established Chu Van An High School?

2. When was Chu Van An High School established?

3. What is the initial purpose of the French government for this school?

4. What was the common name of Chu Van An High School?

5. Say the names of some important Buoi alumni.

V. Read the following text and use the given words to fill in the blanks

by – are – and – And - within – local – secondary - is

Education in Canada is for the most part provided publicly, funded (1) overseen by federal, provincial, and (2) government. Education (3) within provincial jurisdiction and the curriculum is overseen (4) the province. Education in Canada is generally divided (5) primary education, followed by (6) education and post-secondary. (7) the provinces under the ministry of education, there (8) district school boards administering the educational programs.

7. WRITING

I. Finish each of the following sentences so that its meaning stays the same.

1. My brother often drives to work.

→ My brother often goes _____

2. My sister goes to the market every day on foot.

→ My sister _____

3. How much is this car?

→ How much does _____

4. Why don't we go out for a while?

→ What about _____

5. No church in the village is older than this one.

→ This is _____

6. Are there seven hundred pupils in your school?

→ Does your school _____

7. What's your weight?

→ How _____

8. Mr. Quang is Vy's father.

→ Mr. Quang has _____

9. They like pizza very much.

→ Their favorite _____

10. The bookstore is to the left of the hospital.

→ The hospital _____

II. Use the given words to write the complete sentences.

1. school year/ Vietnam/ begin/ September.

→

2. elementary/ school day/ last/ 7:30 A. m/ 1:00 p.m.

→

3. children/ often/ wear/ uniform/ sit/ bench/ behind/ wooden desk/ small porcelain inkpot/ corner.

→

4. schoolgirl/ often wear/ white dress/ boy/ wear/ white shirt/ read kerchief.

→

5. window/ rural school/ often/ have no panel.

→

III. Rearrange the given words or phrases to make meaningful sentences.

1. the same/ the world/ Mathematics/ everywhere else/ as/ in/ is.

.....

2. favorite subjects/ Literature/ secondary school/ one of/ is/ in/ my.

.....

3. an overview/ the continents/ Geography/ about/ gives/ knowledge

.....

4. a 45 minute test/ a 15 minute test/ a month/ There is/ twice/ and/ every week.

.....

5. main exams/ every grade/ There are/ during/ four.

.....
IV. Write a short paragraph (80-100 words) about your first school day of this school year.

ANSWER KEYS

UNIT 1. MY NEW SCHOOL

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

1. A	11. D	21. C	31. D	41. C
2. B	12. B	22. C	32. A	42. B
3. C	13. D	23. C	33. A	43. D
4. C	14. A	24. B	34. D	44. B
5. B	15. C	25. B	35. B	45. A
6. A	16. C	26. B	36. A	46. C
7. B	17. A	27. D	37. A	47. D
8. A	18. A	28. B	38. D	48. A
9. D	19. B	29. C	39. A	49. D
10. C	20. B	30. B	40. D	50. C

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.C	4.B	7.D	10.B	13.D
2.D	5.A	8.B	11.B	14.A
3.A	6.A	9.C	12.A	15.C

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1.A	11.B	21.B	31.A	41.B
2.B	12.A	22.B	32.A	42.C
3.C	13.C	23.D	33. B	43.C
4.B	14.D	24.D	34.D	44.C
5.C	15.B	25.A	35.C	45.D
6.A	16.C	26.B	36.A	46.B
7.D	17.A	27.C	37.C	47.D
8.B	18.C	28C	38.C	48.B
9.B	19.B	29.B	39.B	49.D
10.A	20.C	30.A	40.A	50.A

3. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. actors	6. national	11. interesting	16. boring	21. length
2. artist	7. interviewers	12. difficulty	17. unpopular	22. careful
3. creative	8. creator	13. employees	18. healthy	23. easily
4. equipment	9. activity	14. fastest	19. chemist	24. tasty
5. exciting	10. actress	15. better	20. friendly	25. sleepy

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text.

1. wonderful	2. congratulations	3. celebration
4. competitions	5. tasty	6. hearing

4. VERB FORMS

I. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form

1. walks	2. are learning	3. is going	4. feel	5. are studying
6. have	7. does	8. like	9. do you have	10. doesn't have

II. Fill in the blank with correct forms of a suitable verb (study, have, do, play) to complete the following sentences.

1. studying	2. have	3. study	4. has	5. plays
6. studying	7. have	8. doing	9. do	10. play

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. flies	2. is making	3. is reading	4. get – have	5. is it always raining
6. understands	7. draws	8. are you always criticizing	9. isn't raining	10. rises

IV. Put the verbs into the correct form. Use Present Simple.

1. play	2. reads	3. have	4. does	5. go
6. are	7. has	8. watches	9. is	10. am - are

5. CORRECTION**I. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence.**

1.C	6.A	11.B	16.B
2.C	7.A	12.A	17.C
3.C	8.B	13.A	18.C
4.A	9.A	14.C	19.D
5.A	10.B	15.B	20.D

II. Read the text and find 10 mistakes then correct them.

1. on → in	2. is → has	3. in (seven) → at	4. in → at	5. his → her
6. on → from	7. teach → teaches	8. On the evening → In the evening	9. listens → reads	10. go → goes

6. READING**I. Read the following text and decide which answer best fits each numbered blank.**

1. B	2.D	3.A	4.C
5. B	6.C	7.A	8.D

II. Read the following text and answer the questions below.

1. your	2. for	3. and	4. all
5. forward	6. score	7. actual	8. idea

III. Read the following text and answer the questions below.

1. It is that you're not taking good enough notes.
2. It can be difficult to make sense of them when revising or writing an essay based on them.
3. You may fail to get a strong enough grasp of the topic.
4. Good notes can be read, useful and logically organized.

5. You should try to type them up at the end of the day, while they're still fresh in your mind.

IV. Read the following text and answer the questions below.

1. French authorities established Chu Van An High School.
2. It was established in 1908.
3. It was for training native civil servant to serve in their colonial establishments.
4. It was Buoi School.
5. They were Pham Van Dong, doctor Ton That Tung or poet Xuan Dieu.

V. Read the following text and use the words given in the box to fill in the blanks.

1. and	2. local	3. is	4. by
5. into	6. secondary	7. within	8. are

7. WRITING

I. Finish each of the following sentences so that its meaning stays the same.

1. My brother often goes to work by car.
2. My sister walks to the market every day.
3. How much does this car cost?
4. What about going out for a while?
5. This is the oldest church in the village.
6. Does your school have seven hundred pupils?
7. How heavy are you?
8. Mr. Quang has a daughter, Vy.
9. Their favourite food is pizza.
10. The hospital is to the right of the bookstore.

II. Use the given words to write the complete sentences.

1. The school year in Vietnam begins in September.
2. The elementary school day lasts from 7:30am to 1:00pm.
3. Children often wear uniforms and sit on benches behind wooden desks with small porcelain inkpots in the corners.
4. Schoolgirls often wear white dresses and boys wear white shirts and red kerchiefs.
5. The windows in rural schools often have no panes.

III. Rearrange the given words or phrases to make meaningful sentences.

1. Mathematics is the same as everywhere else in the world.
2. Literature is one of my favorite subjects in secondary school.
3. Geography gives an over view knowledge about the continents.
4. There is a 15 minute test every week and a 45 minute test twice a month.
5. There are four main exams during every grade.

IV. Write a short paragraph (80-100 words) about your first school day of this school year.

=====

A. TỪ VỰNG

- town house /'taʊn ˌhaʊs/ (n): nhà phố
- country house /ˌkʌn.tri ˈhaʊs/ (n): nhà ở nông thôn
- villa /'vɪl.ə/ (n): biệt thự
- stilt house /stɪltsˌhaʊs / (n): nhà sàn
- apartment /ə'pɑːrt.mənt/ (n): căn hộ
- living room /'lɪv.ɪŋ ˌruːm/ (n): phòng khách
- bedroom /'bed.ruːm/ /'bed.rʊm/ (n): phòng ngủ
- kitchen /'kɪtʃ.ən/ (n): nhà bếp
- bathroom /'bæθ.ruːm/ /'bæθ.rʊm/ (n): nhà tắm
- hall /hɔːl/ (n): phòng lớn
- attic /'ætɪk/ (n): gác mái
- lamp /læmp/ (n): đèn
- toilet /'tɔɪl.ɪt/ (n): nhà vệ sinh
- bed /bed/ (n): giường
- cupboard /'kʌb.ərd/ (n): tủ chén
- wardrobe /'wɔːr.droʊb/ (n): tủ đựng quần áo
- fridge /frɪdʒ/ (n): tủ lạnh
- poster /'pəʊ.stər/ (n): áp phích
- chair /tʃeər/ (n): ghế
- air-conditioner /'eər kənˌdɪʃ.ənər/ (n) máy điều hòa không khí
- table /'teɪ bəl/ (n): bàn
- sofa /'soʊ.fə/ (n): ghế trường kỷ, ghế sô pha
- behind /bɪ'haɪnd/ (pre): ở phía sau, đằng sau
- between /bɪ'twɪn/ (pre): ở giữa
- chest of drawers /ˌtʃest əv ˈdrɔːrz/ (n): ngăn kéo tủ

- crazy /'kreɪ.zi/ (adj): kì dị, lạ thường
- department store /dɪ'pɑːrt.mənt ,stɔːr/ (n): cửa hàng bách hóa
- dishwasher /'dɪʃ.wɒʃ.ər/ (n) máy rửa bát (chén) đĩa
- furniture /'fɜː nɪ tʃər/ (n): đồ đạc trong nhà, đồ gỗ
- in front of /ɪn 'frʌnt ʌv/ (pre): ở phía trước, đằng trước
- messy /'mes.i/ (adj): lộn xộn, bừa bộn
- microwave /'maɪ.kroʊ.weɪv/ (n): lò vi sóng
- move /muːv/ (v): di chuyển, chuyển nhà
- next to /'nɛkst tu/ (pre): kế bên, ở cạnh
- under /'ʌn dər/ (pre): ở bên dưới, phía dưới

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

I. THERE IS - THERE ARE

1. Cách dùng

- Trả lời cho câu hỏi "How many..."

Ví dụ:

How many rulers are there on the table? (*Có bao nhiêu chiếc thước kẻ trên bàn?*)

There are three. (*Có 3 chiếc.*)

- Dùng để chỉ sự hiện hữu của sự vật, sự việc, con người ở một nơi nào đó.

Ví dụ:

There is a bear in the cage. (*Có một con gấu ở trong chuồng.*)

There are many trees in the garden. (*Có nhiều cây trong vườn.*)

- Dùng để liệt kê các sự vật, sự việc, con người.

Ví dụ:

There is one table, two lamps and one bookcase in my bedroom.

(*Phòng ngủ của tôi có một cái bàn, hai cái đèn và một cái giá sách.*)

There are 3 boys and one girl in my group. (*Nhóm tôi có ba trai và một gái.*)

Lưu ý: Khi trong câu có nhiều hơn một danh từ thì động từ "to be" được chia theo danh từ đầu tiên đứng sau động từ "to be".

2. Công thức there is và there are ở thể khẳng định

There		Danh từ số ít	Trạng ngữ
-------	--	---------------	-----------

	Is	Danh từ không đếm được	
	Are	Danh từ số nhiều	

Ví dụ:

There is a ruler on the desk. (*Có một cái thước ở trên bàn*)

There is a lot of sugar in my cup of coffee. (*Có rất nhiều đường trong tách cà phê của tôi*)

There are four people in my family (*Nhà tôi có bốn người*)

There are some apples on the table. (*Có vài quả táo ở trên bàn*)

3. Cấu trúc there is và there are ở thể phủ định

There	Is not (isn't)	Danh từ số ít Danh từ không đếm được	Trạng ngữ
	Are not (aren't)	Danh từ số nhiều	

Ví dụ:

There is not a cat in the kitchen. (*Không có con mèo trong bếp*)

There isn't any money in my pocket. (*Không có xu nào trong túi của tôi*)

Ví dụ:

There aren't many taxis in my hometown. (*Không có nhiều taxi ở thị trấn của tôi*)

There aren't many animals in the zoo. (*Không có nhiều động vật trong sở thú*)

4. Công thức there is và there are ở thể nghi vấn

Is	There	Danh từ số ít Danh từ không đếm được	Trạng từ
Are		Danh từ số nhiều	

Ví dụ:

Is there any milk in the cup of coffee? (*Có chút sữa nào trong tách cà phê không?*)

Is there a way to fix this telephone? (*Có cách nào sửa cái điện thoại này không?*)

Ví dụ:

Are there any eggs in the kitchen? (*Trong bếp có trứng không?*)

Are there three tables in the room? (*Trong phòng có 3 cái bàn đúng không?*)

1. There is/ there are (Có...)

2. Prepositions of place (Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn)

3. Asking about place with “Where” (Hỏi về vị trí với Where)

II. PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE (**GIỚI TỪ CHỈ ĐỊA ĐIỂM**)

I. Định nghĩa: Được dùng với các danh từ chỉ nơi chốn, địa điểm, vị trí. Chúng xác định vị trí của chủ ngữ, nơi xảy ra hành động được mô tả bởi động từ trong câu.

Các giới từ chỉ nơi chốn thường gặp: **at, in, on, above, over, before, behind, under, near, between...**

II. Các giới từ chỉ vị trí, địa điểm và cách sử dụng.

1. In front of: Phía trước

Ví dụ: I am standing **in front of** your apartment. Please open the door

(*Tôi đang đứng trước cửa nhà em. Làm ơn mở cửa*)

2. Behind: Đằng sau

Ví dụ: My hat is **behind** the door. (*Mũ của tôi ở đằng sau cái cửa*)

3. Between: ở giữa

Ví dụ: I'm sitting between my mother and my father. (*Tôi đang ngồi giữa mẹ và bố tôi*)

4. Opposite: Đối diện với...

Ví dụ: My house is **opposite** the bank. (*Nhà của tôi nằm đối diện với ngân hàng.*)

5. Next to/ beside: Kế bên, bên cạnh...

Ví dụ: Next to Sandra's house is Disney Park. I'm so jealous with her

(*Kế bên nhà của Sandra là công viên Disney. Tôi vô cùng ghen tỵ với cô ta*)

Don't worry, I always stand beside you. (*Đừng lo, tôi sẽ luôn ở bên cạnh cậu.*)

6. Near/ close to: Gần đó (Chỉ sự gần về khoảng cách, không nhất thiết phải ngay sát)

Ví dụ:

My house near the river .

(*Nhà tôi gần con sông*)

He sat close to his wife and they said nothing

(*Anh ta ngồi gần vợ mình và họ không nói gì cả*)

7. On: ở trên

Ví dụ: Your English book is on the table. (*Sách tiếng Anh của bạn ở trên bàn*)

8. In: Ở trong

Ví dụ: I have been living in Canada for 10 years. (*Tôi đã sống ở Canada trong 10 năm liền*)

9. At: Ở...

- At dùng để chỉ những địa điểm chính xác, cụ thể

Ví dụ: I stayed at home yesterday and watched movie. (*Hôm qua tôi ở nhà và xem*

phim)

- Chỉ những sự kiện, những bữa tiệc

Ví dụ: I met him at my birthday party and we fell in love with each other.

(Tôi gặp anh ấy ở bữa tiệc sinh nhật của tôi và chúng tôi đã yêu nhau)

- Chỉ những địa điểm mà người ta tới đó để làm những việc cụ thể (khám chữa bệnh, học hành, đọc sách, xem phim,...): at hospital, at school, at library, at movie theater,...

Ví dụ: I was reading at library at 3 o'clock yesterday.

(Tôi đang đọc sách ở thư viện vào lúc 3h ngày hôm qua.)

10. Above/ over: ở trên, cao hơn cái gì đó.

Ví dụ: Her apartment is above mine. (Căn hộ của cô ấy ở phía trên của tôi.)

There wine all over the floor. (Rượu đổ đầy sàn nhà.)

11. Under: Ở dưới, thấp hơn cái gì đó

Ví dụ: The cat is sleeping under this table. (Con mèo đang ngủ dưới cái bàn này.)

12. Before: Phía trước, đằng trước

Ví dụ: An old man is standing before a bakery. (Một ông già đang đứng trước một tiệm bánh.)

C. BÀI TẬP

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> lang | B. <u>s</u> ugar | C. <u>s</u> ize | D. <u>s</u> ong |
| 2. A. gla <u>s</u> ses | B. wat <u>c</u> hes | C. dri <u>v</u> es | D. choo <u>s</u> es |
| 3. A. boo <u>k</u> s | B. pla <u>n</u> s | C. ta <u>b</u> les | D. cha <u>i</u> rs |
| 4. A. lo <u>s</u> es | B. choo <u>s</u> es | C. magazi <u>n</u> es | D. hou <u>s</u> es |
| 5. A. grou <u>p</u> s | B. fa <u>n</u> s | C. bottl <u>e</u> s | D. flow <u>e</u> rs |
| 6. A. schoo <u>l</u> s | B. sho <u>p</u> s | C. pet <u>s</u> | D. cart <u>s</u> |
| 7. A. pen <u>s</u> | B. clo <u>s</u> ets | C. swee <u>t</u> s | D. lamp <u>s</u> |
| 8. A. rul <u>e</u> rs | B. pen <u>c</u> ils | C. bag <u>s</u> | D. boo <u>k</u> s |
| 9. A. mat <u>c</u> hes | B. mak <u>e</u> s | C. brus <u>h</u> es | D. peach <u>e</u> s |
| 10. A. bee <u>s</u> | B. cupboar <u>d</u> s | C. wat <u>c</u> hes | D. bedroo <u>m</u> s |
| 11. A. fe <u>a</u> st | B. se <u>a</u> t | C. br <u>e</u> ad | D. he <u>a</u> t |
| 12. A. pea <u>n</u> ut | B. cu <u>t</u> | C. shu <u>t</u> | D. pu <u>t</u> |
| 13. A. wh <u>a</u> t | B. fl <u>a</u> t | C. sa <u>n</u> d | D. Sa <u>t</u> urday |
| 14. A. hi <u>k</u> e | B. bes <u>i</u> de | C. hi <u>d</u> e | D. pi <u>c</u> nic |
| 15. A. wash <u>e</u> d | B. sac <u>r</u> ed | C. book <u>e</u> d | D. hop <u>e</u> d |
| 16. A. form <u>s</u> | B. chair <u>s</u> | C. seat <u>s</u> | D. key <u>s</u> |
| 17. A. paper <u>s</u> | B. boss <u>e</u> s | C. brus <u>h</u> es | D. fox <u>e</u> s |
| 18. A. cat <u>s</u> | B. dog <u>s</u> | C. phon <u>e</u> s | D. draw <u>e</u> r <u>s</u> |

19. A. pig <u>s</u>	B. plant <u>s</u>	C. tabl <u>e</u> s	D. comput <u>e</u> r <u>s</u>
20. A. beach <u>e</u> s	B. watch <u>e</u> s	C. sink <u>s</u>	D. lunch <u>e</u> s
21. A. boy <u>s</u>	B. lesson <u>s</u>	C. cat <u>s</u>	D. pictur <u>e</u> s
22. A. plac <u>e</u> s	B. messag <u>e</u> s	C. hous <u>e</u> s	D. cloth <u>e</u> s
23. A. sink <u>s</u>	B. bag <u>s</u>	C. lapto <u>p</u> s	D. studen <u>t</u> s
24. A. fridg <u>e</u> s	B. kiss <u>e</u> s	C. watch <u>e</u> s	D. wardrob <u>e</u> s
25. A. plat <u>e</u> s	B. poster <u>s</u>	C. tre <u>e</u> s	D. song <u>s</u>
26. A. lig <u>h</u> t	B. frig <u>i</u> dge	C. sin <u>k</u>	D. kit <u>ch</u> en
27. A. lamp <u>s</u>	B. window <u>s</u>	C. desk <u>s</u>	D. plant <u>s</u>
28. A. lo <u>o</u> k	B. co <u>o</u> k	C. bo <u>o</u> k	D. ro <u>o</u> m
29. A. poster	B. chopstick	C. sof <u>a</u>	D. wardrob <u>e</u>
30. A. hon <u>e</u> y	B. h <u>o</u> use	C. h <u>o</u> ur	D. h <u>o</u> tel
31. A. chair <u>s</u>	B. sofa <u>s</u>	C. room <u>s</u>	D. sink <u>s</u>
32. A. lamp <u>s</u>	B. hall <u>s</u>	C. desk <u>s</u>	D. light <u>s</u>
33. A. vas <u>e</u> s	B. fridg <u>e</u> s	C. dish <u>e</u> s	D. tabl <u>e</u> s
34. A. hous <u>e</u> s	B. pictur <u>e</u> s	C. wardrob <u>e</u> s	D. bookshelv <u>e</u> s
35. A. bag	B. fam <u>i</u> ly	C. bath	D. fan
36. A. bo <u>th</u>	B. hon <u>e</u> y	C. teleph <u>o</u> ne	D. nob <u>o</u> dy
37. A. child	B. sunshin <u>e</u>	C. din <u>e</u>	D. din <u>n</u> er
38. A. teacher	B. ch <u>a</u> lk	C. mat <u>ch</u>	D. chem <u>i</u> stry
39. A. homel <u>a</u> nd	B. h <u>o</u> usehold	C. h <u>o</u> urly	D. h <u>o</u> wever
40. A. cheek <u>s</u>	B. hand <u>s</u>	C. elbow <u>s</u>	D. finger <u>s</u>
41. A. mother <u>s</u>	B. cent <u>e</u> rs	C. aunt <u>s</u>	D. cousin <u>s</u>
42. A. cit <u>i</u> es	B. watch <u>e</u> s	C. dish <u>e</u> s	D. hous <u>e</u> s
43. A. grandparent <u>s</u>	B. brother <u>s</u>	C. uncl <u>e</u> s	D. father <u>s</u>
44. A. frig <u>i</u> dge	B. lig <u>h</u> t	C. pictur <u>e</u>	D. liv <u>i</u> ng
45. A. televis <u>i</u> on	B. toilet	C. b <u>e</u> d	D. basket
46. A. liv <u>e</u> s	B. work <u>s</u>	C. play <u>s</u>	D. studi <u>e</u> s
47. A. danc <u>e</u> s	B. mak <u>e</u> s	C. ask <u>s</u>	D. stop <u>s</u>
48. A. cook <u>s</u>	B. tell <u>s</u>	C. read <u>s</u>	D. go <u>e</u> s
49. A. walk <u>s</u>	B. kiss <u>e</u> s	C. danc <u>e</u> s	D. box <u>e</u> s
50. A. wish <u>e</u> s	B. pass <u>e</u> s	C. kiss <u>e</u> s	D. mak <u>e</u> s

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1. A. diverse	B. mountain	C. rooster	D. crowded
2. A. railway	B. Korean	C. under	D. funny
3. A. money	B. cupboard	C. firework	D. remote
4. A. remember	B. condition	C. dishwasher	D. department

- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 5. A. appearance | B. family | C. windsurfing | D. serious |
| 6. A. boarding | B. sofa | C. patient | D. between |
| 7. A. empty | B. desert | C. prepare | D. quiet |
| 8. A. active | B. remote | C. wonder | D. thrilling |
| 9. A. sporty | B. surround | C. pollute | D. between |
| 10. A. firefighter | B. furniture | C. essential | D. decorate |
| 11. A. behind | B. happy | C. sofa | D. dinner |
| 12. A. grandparents | B. computer | C. microwave | D. beautiful |
| 13. A. fireplace | B. laptop | C. tourist | D. hotel |
| 14. A. interesting | B. apartment | C. dishwasher | D. family |
| 15. A. cupboard | B. messy | C. device | D. bedroom |

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- What's the date today ? - It is ____ June.
A. twelve B. twelfth C. twelve of D. the twelfth of
- How many windows are there in your house? - ____ six.
A. There is B. There are C. There has D. There have
- ____ is Phong ? - He's in the living room.
A. When B. Where C. Who D. What
- Which verb adds ____es in the third person?
A. go B. write C. sleep D. tell
- ____ a clock in your room?
A. Are there B. Is there C. Have there D. Has there
- There are a lot of things ____ in Da Lat .
A. see B. to see C. seeing D. to seeing
- It is called the Tiger room ____ there is a big tiger on the wall.
A. because B. so C. but D. like
- I live ____ my parents and my younger sister in a town house ____ Ha Noi.
A. with - at B. at - at C. of - in D. with - in
- We are moving ____ a new house ____ the city centre soon.
A. to - in B. at - at C. to - from D. from - in
- We live in a town house, but our grandparents live in a ____ house.
A. villa B. country C. apartment D. city
- There are two lights ____ the ceiling.
A. at B. in C. on D. between
- There is a family photo ____ the wall.
A. on B. at C. in D. next
- There ____ four chairs and a table ____ the middle of the room.

A. is - on B. is - in C. are - at D. are - in

14. We need some chairs _____ the kitchen.

A. with B. for C. at D. on

15. There are some dirty dishes _____ the floor.

A. in B. with C. on D. for

16. There is an electric _____, a stove and a fridge in our kitchen.

A. cooking B. cooker C. cook D. cooked

17. They are having lunch in their beautiful big _____ room.

A. dined B. dinner C. dine D. dining

18. He should clean his _____ room. There are a lot of toys and clothes on the floor.

A. messy B. mess C. messing D. messed

19. They look around their new apartment with lots of _____ modern devices.

A. interest B. interested C. interestingly D. interesting

20. Your cupboard is too old. Let's _____ a new one.

A. buy B. bought C. buying D. to buy

21. My father is watching TV in the _____ while my mother is cooking in the _____.

A. living room/ bedroom B. bedroom/ bathroom

C. living room/ kitchen D. kitchen/ hall

22. His uncle climbs the ladder and puts old things in the _____.

A. attic B. toilet C. hall D. bathroom

23. Many people live in _____ in mountainous areas to avoid dangerous animals.

A. town houses B. villas C. stilt houses D. apartments

24. It's so hot in my living room because the _____ was broken.

A. fridge B. air-conditioner C. dishwasher D. cooker

25. You should tidy up your clothes in the _____. They seem so messy.

A. sofa B. cupboard C. sink D. wardrobe

26. Don't stand _____ the TV I'm trying to watch this programme.

A. behind B. next to C. under D. in front of

27. You should never stand _____ a tree when it is raining,

A. at B. under C. between D. on

28. My mother is in the _____ baking a cake for my birthday.

A. bathroom B. dinning room C. kitchen D. bedroom

29. Please turn the _____ on. It's so hot in here.

A. fan B. light C. television D. faucet

30. The Tay and Nung people mostly live in _____ made of wood and bamboo.

A. apartments B. stilt houses C. town houses D. villas

31. In our dining room, _____ four chairs and a table. We have breakfast there every morning.

A. there is B. there are C. there isn't D. there aren't

32. _____ any children in the playground right now.
 A. There is B. There are C. There aren't D. There isn't
33. I like my bedroom best. It's my _____ room.
 A. beautiful B. comfortable C. wonderful D. favourite
34. My room is so _____! Dirty clothes, toys, books are all over the floor!
 A. messy B. crazy C. tidy D. cozy
35. 'Where do you live?' '_____',
 A. On the floor. B. In the kitchen.
 C. In a town house. D. Next to the bookshelf.
36. Turn on the _____, please. It's so hot here.
 A. cupboard B. dishwasher
 C. air conditioner D. lamp
37. I _____ an _____ with three friends.
 A. share – apartment B. move – attic
 C. share – furniture D. move – country house
38. I put my clothes in the _____ at the corner of my bedroom.
 A. wall B. hall C. kitchen D. chest of drawers
39. You must be _____ to lend him your motorbike. He's very careless.
 A. crazy B. attic C. interesting D. briefly
40. Where should we go to buy some clothes, fruits and food? – In _____.
 A. a hall B. a living room
 C. a department store D. a stilt house
41. Don't run the _____ half empty. It wastes energy.
 A. dishwasher B. kitchen C. wardrobe D. sink
42. She ran excitedly down the _____ to greet her cousins.
 A. furniture B. hall C. messy D. armchair
43. Would you mind helping me hang this dress in the _____?
 A. sofa B. sink C. wardrobe D. vase
44. A _____ is a piece of electrical equipment to store food and keep food cold or fresh.
 A. fridge B. dishwasher C. microwave D. cooker
45. He asked the children to go to the _____ and wash their hands.
 A. upstairs B. attic C. bathroom D. apartment
46. Put these glasses and bowls on the _____ over there, please.
 A. wall B. cupboard C. fridge D. lamp
47. My bedroom is big but it doesn't have much _____. There is just a bed, a table, a chair and a bookcase.
 A. things B. picture C. desk D. furniture
48. It's becoming hotter so I'm going to install a(n) _____ in my bedroom.

A. fridge B. air conditioner C. television D. lamp

49. It's better for your neck when you sleep with a _____ that is not too high or too low.

A. pillow B. bed C. ceiling fan D. stool

50. I often reheat my soup in the _____ before eating.

A. cupboard B. microwave C. dishwasher D. sink

③. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. I keep my socks in the bottom _____. (DRAW)
2. I don't attach any _____ to these rumours. (IMPORTANT)
3. Payment is _____ upon delivery of the goods. (CONDITION)
4. This story is apparently a complete _____. (INVENT)
5. What a _____ thing to say! (BEAUTY)
6. There's no _____ in the results. (DIFFERENT)
7. Do you get many _____? (VISIT)
8. Do you have any ideas? You're the _____ one. (CREATE)
9. The road gradually _____ out. (WIDE)
10. This room is twice the _____ of the kitchen. (LONG)
11. There are four _____ in my house. (BOOKSHELF)
12. My mother goes _____ twice a week. (SHOP)
13. There is arice paddy near my house (BEAUTY)
14. To the right of my house there is a _____ garden. (BEAUTY)
15. I'd like some bread. Let's go to the _____. (BAKE)
16. He greets me in a _____ way. (FRIEND)
17. What's Maco's _____? - She's British. (NATION)
18. Yoko is from Japan. She is _____ (Japan) (JAPAN)
19. These children like _____ weather. (SUN)
20. Lan's classroom is on the _____ floor. (TWO)

④. VERB FORMS

I. Fill in the blanks with *is, are, isn't, aren't, do, does*.

1. We _____ staying at my cousin's house in Vung Tau.
2. _____ they have the right things for the kitchen?
3. Where _____ you live, Phong?
4. Where _____ your uncle live?
5. How many rooms _____ there in the hotel?
6. There _____ any chairs in the kitchen. We need five chairs.
7. Which house _____ you want to live in? A town house or a country house?

8. There _____ any furniture in my bedroom. I need many things.

9. In my house, there _____ four bedrooms.

10. What _____ Mrs. Brown need for the living room?

II. Give the correct form of the words in the blank (Using the present simple and present continuous).

1. Lan (**not have**) _____ many friends in her new school.

2. Hung (**come**) _____ from Ha Noi but he (**stay**) _____ with his relatives in Ho Chi Minh city at the moment.

3. We (**not drive**) _____ to work every day. We (**go**) _____ by bus.

4. Who you (**talk**) _____ to on the phone now, Minh?

5. Where your new friend (**live**) _____ Nga?

-She (**live**) _____ on Hang Bai street.

6. you (**be**) _____ in class 7A?

-No, I (**be**) _____ in class 7D.

7. Look! Jane (**play**) _____ the guitar. This afternoon, she will play table tennis.

8. I (**not talk**) _____ to her at present

9. How often _____ she (**go**) _____ fishing?

- She (**go**) _____ once a year.

10. (**Be**) _____ your friends students?

-Yes, they (**be**) _____

III. Complete the sentences with the -ing form of the verbs. Use short forms.

Example: Come round to my place - we're *listening* to music. (**listen**)

1. Look! The dog (**swim**) _____ in the river!

2. Don't disturb me! I (**read**) _____ a good book.

3. She (**enjoy**) _____ her holiday.

4. They (**play**) _____ a computer game.

5. You (**do**) _____ your homework.

6. Look! The girls(**skip**) _____ in the schoolyard.

7. Ssh! They (**study**) _____ in the library.

8. Listen! Someone (**knock**) _____ at the door.

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb:

go, play, help, have.

1. Our cat _____ football!

2. I _____ computer games in the evening.

3. I _____ my sister with her homework.

4. My sister _____ me to clean my bike.

5. We _____ a new classmate, Mai.

6. We _____ to school from Mondays to Fridays.

7. My father _____ to work at 7 o'clock every morning.
 8. On Sundays, my sister _____ shopping.

5. CORRECTION

I. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence.

1. How many tables is there in the classroom?
 A B C D
2. What does your sisters do and how old are they?
 A B C D
3. This is my chair and that are your chairs.
 A B C D
4. There are five benchs and two tables in the house.
 A B C D
5. This is my brother and he's name is Minh.
 A B C D
6. The cat is among the lamp and the bed.
 A B C D
7. There are a cupboard, a dishwasher and a table in the kitchen.
 A B C D
8. Is there a television front of the microwave?
 A B C D
9. The party will start at seven o'clock on the evening.
 A B C D
10. The armchairs aren't far from the television. They are near to the television.
 A B C D
11. It's Steve's birthday next weekend. I want buy him something
 A B C D
12. There are two bookshelf in my sister's bedroom.
 A B C D
13. Do you keep silently when your teacher is explaining the lessons?
 A B C D
14. His house has a strangely shape, and it's next to the supermarket.
 A B C D
15. There are lots of small teddy bear on his bed.
 A B C D
16. There is a lot of books on the bookshelf in his room.
 A B C D
17. I'm so thirsty, but there aren't any water in the bottle.
 A B C D

18. The bathtub is behind the shower and the sink in the bathroom.

A B C D

19. He is lying in the sofa to watch a film on TV.

A B C D

20. We are standing in front the armchair and taking some photos.

A B C D

II. Underline the mistake and then correct it

Sentences	Correction
1. Where is the flowers?	
2. There are a park near Tuan's house.	
3. The TV is between the telephone in the lamp.	
4. The mountains are to the left in the house.	
5. Where is there behind the house?	
6. My school have a big yard	
7. Lan watchs TV every day	
8. What time do she get up?	
9. Mr. Quyen teach English at Yen Nhan secondary school	
10. The students is in the classroom.	

6. READING

I. Read the following text and use the words given in the box to fill in the blanks.

or	for	more	architecture
before	and	These	by

English art and architecture, the distinctive national art and (1) _____ that art may be said to have evolved in the 12th century with the Norman style. Building (2) _____ that time was in what is commonly called the Saxon (3) _____ Anglo-Saxon style, which combined Roman (4) _____ Celtic features, it is represented (5) _____ sparse remains of monasteries, churches, and cathedral crypts, notable (6) _____ the use of long-and-short ashlar stonework (7) _____ churches were small, relatively simple structures, having one or (8) _____ towers and one or three aisles, with wooden or stone roofing.

II. Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Norman style, Romanesque architecture that developed (1) _____ Normandy and England between the 11th and 12th centuries and during the general adoption of Gothic (2) _____ in both countries. Because only shortly before the Norman Conquest (3) _____ England (1066) did Normandy become settled and sophisticated (4) _____ to produce an architecture, the Norman style developed almost simultaneously in (5) _____ two countries; early buildings, erected soon after the

conquest, (6) _____ extremely similar. Eventually, however, the styles of the two countries diverged, (7) _____ the architecture of Normandy drew closer in form to typical French Romanesque, whereas that of England (called Anglo-Norman Architecture) because (8) _____ much more distinctive national tradition.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. on | B. at | C. over | D. in |
| 2. A. engineering | B. engineer | C. architecture | D. architect |
| 3. A. of | B. about | C. within | D. from |
| 4. A. much | B. enough | C. over | D. high |
| 5. A. a | B. an | C. the | D. No article |
| 6. A. is | B. are | C. has | D. have |
| 7. A. and | B. or | C. as | D. because |
| 8. A. one | B. the | C. an | D. a |

III. Read the text and decide whether the statements are True (T) or False (F)

My dream house is a cottage not far from the sea. On the ground-floor, there are four rooms. The first room is my living room, which has a white sofa, a black armchair and a coffee table. There are lots of paintings and trinkets as well. There is also a lamp, French windows with a view of the garden, television set and a phone in the living room. My dream house has a fully-equipped kitchen, including a fridge and a door to the garden. There is a bathroom with a shower and toilet. There is also a study room where I keep my desk and computer. On the first floor, There are three bedrooms and a bathroom.

1. _____ There are 4 rooms in author's house.
2. _____ There are grey armchair and a coffee table in the living room.
3. _____ There are French windows with a view of the sea.
4. _____ The kitchen in the house is fully equipped.
5. _____ There are three bedrooms and a bathroom on the first floor.

IV. Read and choose the correct answers.

Mr. Smith's house has got four bedrooms, a living-room, a dining-room, a kitchen, a bathroom and a separate toilet. There is a toilet in the bathroom too. The bedrooms and the bathroom are upstairs, and the living-room, the dining-room, the kitchen and the toilet are downstairs.

The first bedroom is Mr. and Mrs. Smith's, the second one is Tom's, the third one is Mary's, and the fourth one is Anne's. There is a baby bed in Anne's bedroom too, but there is no baby living there.

When you enter Mr. Smith's house, the room on the left is the living-room, and the room on the right is the dining-room. Where is the kitchen? It is behind the dining-room. And where is the toilet? It is straight on, in front of you. There is a garden behind the house, but it is not big. Is there a garden in front of the house too? Yes, there is, but it is very small.

When you go upstairs, Mr. and Mrs. Smith's bedroom is on the left. The bedroom on your right is Tom's, and the bathroom is between his bedroom and Mary's. Anne's bedroom is behind Mary's.

1. Which of the following is correct?
 - A. Three of Mr. Smith's bedrooms are upstairs, and one of them is downstairs.
 - B. Mr. Smith's four bedrooms are downstairs.
 - C. Mr. Smith's four bedrooms are upstairs.
2. Choose the correct sentence:
 - A. There is one toilet in Mr. Smith's house. It is downstairs.
 - B. There are two toilets in Mr. Smith's house. One of them is upstairs.
 - C. There is one toilet in Mr. Smith's house. It is upstairs.
3. Choose the correct answer:
 - A. The living room is upstairs.
 - B. The living room is downstairs.
 - C. The dining room is upstairs.
4. Choose the correct answer:
 - A. There are two beds in Anne's bedroom.
 - B. There is one bed in Anne's bedroom.
 - C. There are three beds in Anne's bedroom.
5. Choose the correct answer:
 - A. There is a small garden in front of the house, and there is a big one behind it.
 - B. There is a small garden in front of the house, and there is a small one behind it.
 - C. There is a big garden in front of the house, and there is a big one behind it.
6. Choose the correct answer:
 - A. The bathroom is between the first bedroom and the second one.
 - B. The bathroom is between the second bedroom and the third one.
 - C. The bathroom is between the third bedroom and the fourth one.
7. Choose the correct answer:
 - A. Tom's bedroom is behind Mary's.
 - B. Mary's bedroom is in front of Tom's.
 - C. Mary's bedroom is in front of Anne's.

7. WRITING

I. Add “is, are, a, an, some, any” to make a correct sentence.

Ex: *There/pencil/ in/ the/ box.* ✎ *There is a pencil in the box.*

1. There/ book/ on/ the table.

✎

2. There/ shoes/ under/ the chair.

✎

3. There/ not/ TV/ in/ his room.

✎

4. There/ not/ pens/ on/ my desk.

✎

5. There/ boy/ behind/ that tree.

✎

6. There/ girls/ in front of/ the house.

✎

7. There/ not/ telephone/ in her office.

✎

8. There/ not/ chairs/ downstairs.

✎

II. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. house/ a/ Minh/ lake/ a/ lives/ in/ near.

✎

2. yard/ front/ school/There/ big/ of/ is/ our/ in/ a.

✎

3. many/ right/ the/ museum/ Are/ flowers/ the/ there/ to/ of/?

✎

4. next/ photocopy/ What/ store/ there/ the/ is/ to /?

✎

5. hospital/ father/ in/ the/ city/ 2yiy/ a/ works/ in.

✎

6. there/ family/ many/ in/ are/ How/ Linh's/ people/ ?

✎

7. his/ friend/ in/ family/ My/ Hanoi/ doesn't/ with/ live.

✎

8. brushes/six/gets/her/o'clock/Hoa/at/up/teeth/and.

✎

9. on/ floor/ classroom/ the/ is/ Our/ first.

✎

10. Minh's/ six/ There/ in/ rooms/ house/ are.

✎

III. Make sentences from the given words or phrases.

1. There/ a bed/ corner/ the room.

~~/~~

2. Shelves/ above/ the closet.

~~/~~

3. Wardrobe/ the center/ the room.

~~/~~

4. Table/ between/ two chairs.

~~/~~

5. Lamp/ next/ the bed.

~~/~~

6. Table/ the right/ the wardrobe.

~~/~~

7. There/ some pictures/ the wall.

~~/~~

8. There/ a window/ the left-side/ the room.

~~/~~

9. Bed/ opposite/ the door.

~~/~~

10. There/ some bottles/ the shelf.

~~/~~

IV. Write sentences about your living room, your kitchen and your bedroom.

1. In the living room, there's a sofa, there are two

2. In the

3. In the

=====

ANSWER KEYS

UNIT 2: MY HOME

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

1. B	11. B	21. C	31. D	41. C
2. C	12. D	22. D	32. B	42. A
3. A	13. A	23. B	33. D	43. A
4. C	14. D	24. D	34. A	44. B
5. A	15. B	25. A	35. C	45. C

6. A	16. C	26. A	36. B	46. B
7. A	17. A	27. B	37. D	47. A
8. D	18. A	28. D	38. D	48. A
9. B	19. B	29. B	39. C	49. A
10. C	20. C	30. C	40. A	50. C

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.A	4.C	7.C	10.C	13.D
2.B	5.A	8.B	11.A	14.B
3.D	6.D	9.A	12.B	15.C

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1.D	11.A	21.C	31.B	41.A
2.B	12.A	22.A	32.C	42.B
3.B	13.D	23.C	33.D	43.C
4.A	14.B	24.B	34.A	44.A
5.B	15.C	25.D	35.C	45.C
6.B	16.B	26.D	36.C	46.B
7.A	17.D	27.B	37.A	47.D
8.D	18.A	28.C	38.D	48.B
9.A	19.D	29.A	39.A	49.A
10.B	20.A	30.B	40.C	50.B

③. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. drawer	6. difference	11. bookshelves	16. friendly
2. importance	7. visitors	12. shopping	17. nationality
3. conditional	8. creative	13. beautiful	18. Japanese
4. invention	9. widens	14. beautiful	19. sunny
5. beautiful	10. length	15. bakery	20. second

4. VERB FORMS

I. Fill in the blanks with *is, are, isn't, aren't, do, does*.

1. are	2. Do	3. do	4. does	5. are
6. aren't	7. do	8. isn't	9. are	10. does

II. Give the correct form of the words in the blank (Using the present simple and present continuous).

1. doesn't have	2. comes, is staying	3. don't drive go	4. are you talking	5. does...live lives
6. are, am	7. is playing	8. am not talking	9. does... go goes	10. Are, are

III. Complete the sentences with the -ing form of the verbs. Use short forms.

1. The dog's swimming	2. I'm reading	3. She's enjoying	4. They're playing
5. You're doing	6. are skipping	7. They're studying	8. Someone's knocking

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb: *go, play, help, have*.

1. plays	2. play	3. 3. help	4. helps
5. have	6. go	7. goes	8. goes

5. CORRECTION

I. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence.

1.B	6.B	11.C	16. A
2.A	7.A	12.B	17.C
3.C	8.C	13.B	18.A
4.B	9.C	14.B	19.B
5.C	10.C	15.C	20.A

II. Underline the mistake and then correct it

1. is → are	2. are → is	3. in → and	4. to → on	5. where → what
6. have → has	7. watchs → watches	8. do → does	9. teach → teaches	10. is → are

6. READING

I. Read the following text and use the words given in the box to fill in the blanks.

1. architecture	2. Before	3. Or	4. And
5. by	6. For	7. these	8. More

II. Read the following text and complete the statements below.

1. D	2.C	3.A	4.B
5. C	6.B	7.A	8.D

III. Read the text and decide whether the statements are True (T) or False (F)

1. F	2. F	3.F	4. T	5. T
------	------	-----	------	------

IV. Read and choose the correct answers.

1. C	2.B	3.B	4.A
5. B	6.B	7.C	

7. WRITING

I. Add ‘is, are, a, an, some, any’ to make a correct sentence

1. There is a book on the table.
2. There are some shoes under the chair.
3. There isn't a TV in his room.
4. There aren't any pens on my desk.
5. There is a boy behind that tree.
6. There are some girls in front of the house.
7. There isn't a telephone in her office.
8. There aren't any chairs downstairs.

II. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. Minh lives in a house near a lake.
2. There is a big yard in front of our school.
3. Are there many flowers to the right of the museum?
4. What is there next to the photocopy store?
5. My father works in a hospital in the city.
6. How many people are there in Linh's family?
7. My friend doesn't live with his family in Ha Noi.
8. Hoa gets up at six o'clock and brushes her teeth.
9. Our classroom is on the first floor.
10. There are six rooms in Minh's house.

III. Make sentences from the given words or phrases.

1. There is a bed in the corner of the room.
2. The shelves are above the closet.
3. The wardrobe is in the center of the room.
4. The table is between the two chairs.
5. The lamp is next to the bed.
6. The table is on the right of the wardrobe.
7. There are some pictures on the wall.

8. There is a window on the left-side of the room.

9. The bed is opposite the door.

10. There are some bottles on the shelf.

IV. Write sentences about your living room, your kitchen and your bedroom.

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- arm /ɑ:rm/ (n): cánh tay
- ear /ɪər/ (n): tai
- eye /aɪ/ (n): mắt
- leg /leg/ (n): chân
- nose /noʊz/ (n): mũi
- finger /'fɪŋ·gər/ (n): ngón tay
- tall /tɔl/ (a): cao
- short /ʃɔrt/ (a) ùn, thấp
- big /bɪg/ (a): to
- small /smɔl/ (a): nhỏ
- active /'æk tɪv/ (adj): hăng hái, năng động
- appearance /ə'piər·əns/ (n): dáng vẻ, ngoại hình
- barbecue /'bɑr·bɪ,kju/ (n): món thịt nướng barbecue
- boring /'bɔ:·rɪŋ/ (adj): buồn tẻ
- choir /kwɑɪər/ (n): dàn đồng ca
- competition /,kɒm pɪ'tɪʃ ən/ (n): cuộc đua, cuộc thi
- confident /'kɒn fɪ dənt/ (adj): tự tin, tin tưởng
- curious /'kjʊər·i·əs/ (adj): tò mò, thích tìm hiểu
- gardening /'gɑrd·nɪŋ/ (v): làm vườn
- firefighter /'faɪər,fai·tər/ (n): lính cứu hỏa
- fireworks /'faɪər,wɜrks/ (n): pháo hoa
- funny /'fʌn i/ (adj): buồn cười, thú vị
- generous /'dʒen·ə·rəs/ (adj): rộng rãi, hào phóng
- museum /mjʊ'zi·əm/ (n): viện bảo tàng

- organise /'ɔːr gəˌnaɪz/ (v): tổ chức
- patient /'peɪ·ʃənt/ (adj): điềm tĩnh
- personality /ˌpɜː·səˈnæl·ɪ·ti/ (n): tính cách, cá tính
- prepare /prɪˈpeə/ (v): chuẩn bị
- racing /'reɪ.sɪŋ/ (n): cuộc đua
- reliable /rɪˈlaɪ·ə·bəl/ (adj): đáng tin cậy
- serious /'sɪr.i.əs/ (adj): nghiêm túc
- shy /ʃaɪ/ (adj): bẽn lẽn, hay xấu hổ
- sporty /'spɔːr.ti/ (adj): đáng thể thao, khỏe mạnh
- volunteer /ˌvɒl·ənˈtɪr/ (n): tình nguyện viên
- zodiac /'zoʊd·i,æk/ (n) cung hoàng đạo

B. LÝ THUYẾT:

I. THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR FUTURE

(THÌ HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN MANG NGHĨA TƯƠNG LAI)

1. Công thức

(+) S + is/ am/ are + V-ing
 (-) S + is/ am/ are + not + V-ing
 (?) Is/ am/ are+S + V-ing ?

2. Cách dùng

Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn được dùng diễn tả sự sắp xếp hay kế hoạch trong tương lai, thường trong câu xuất hiện từ chỉ thời gian cụ thể.

Ví dụ:

They're building a new school next year.

(Năm tới họ sẽ xây một trường học mới.)

(Việc xây dựng trường học đã được lên kế hoạch rõ ràng và cụ thể.)*

We **are having** a party next Sunday. Would you like to come?

(Chúng tôi có tổ chức 1 bữa tiệc vào chủ nhật tới, mời bạn đến dự)

(Đã mời người ta thì bữa tiệc phải đã được chuẩn bị hết rồi.)*

* Chú ý: Chúng ta sử dụng cấu trúc “Be going to + V” (Sẽ làm gì) để diễn tả hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai gần.

II. VERB BE AND HAVE FOR DESCRIPTIONS

(SỬ DỤNG TO BE VÀ HAVE ĐỂ MIÊU TẢ)

1. “To be”

Chúng ta thường sử dụng động từ ‘to be’ để miêu tả ngoại hình hoặc tính cách của ai đó.

Dạng khẳng định: **S + to be + adj.**

Dạng phủ định: **S + to be + not + adj.**

Dạng nghi vấn: **To be + S + adj?**

Ví dụ:

I am patient. (*Tôi rất kiên nhẫn*)

They are intelligent. (*Họ thông minh.*)

She is young. (*Cô ấy rất trẻ.*)

He is well built. (*Anh ấy thật vạm vỡ.*)

2. “Have/ has”

Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng “have/ has” để miêu tả ngoại hình của ai đó.

- Dạng khẳng định:

S + have/ has + (a/ an) + adj + body part (từ chỉ bộ phận)

- Dạng phủ định:

S + do/ does + not + have + (a/ an) + adj + body part (từ chỉ bộ phận)

- Câu hỏi:

Do/ Does + S + have + (a/ an) + adj + body part? (từ chỉ bộ phận)

- Trả lời:

Yes, S + do/ does.

No, S + do not (don't)/ does not (doesn't).

Ví dụ:

I have short hair. (*Tôi có mái tóc ngắn.*)

The cat has green eyes. (*Con mèo có đôi mắt màu xanh.*)

Ví dụ:

I have short hair. (*Tôi có mái tóc ngắn.*)

The cat has green eyes. (*Con mèo có đôi mắt màu xanh.*)

She doesn't have blond hair. (*Cô ấy không có mái tóc xoăn.*)

- Câu hỏi Wh- question:

Ví dụ:

- What color eyes do you have? (*Bạn có đôi mắt màu gì?*)

I have blue eyes. (*Tôi có đôi mắt màu xanh dương.*)

- What sort of hair does she have? (*Cô ấy có kiểu tóc gì?*)

She has curly hair. (*Cô ấy có một mái tóc xoắn.*)

C. BÀI TẬP:

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. am <u>az</u> ing | B. g <u>a</u> te | C. pl <u>a</u> y | D. p <u>a</u> rent |
| 2. A. h <u>e</u> lp | B. e <u>n</u> ding | C. e <u>q</u> uip | D. s <u>e</u> tting |
| 3. A. sail <u>o</u> r | B. ph <u>o</u> to | C. s <u>o</u> ld | D. f <u>o</u> ld |
| 4. A. f <u>a</u> ir | B. tr <u>a</u> in | C. w <u>a</u> it | D. g <u>a</u> in |
| 5. A. t <u>i</u> ger | B. h <u>i</u> nt | C. f <u>i</u> ve | D. sl <u>i</u> de |
| 6. A. c <u>o</u> oker | B. an <u>c</u> ient | C. c <u>o</u> ver | D. c <u>o</u> me |
| 7. A. u <u>n</u> ion | B. u <u>n</u> iversity | C. b <u>u</u> t | D. h <u>u</u> mour |
| 8. A. visib <u>l</u> e | B. b <u>r</u> ing | C. b <u>u</u> ilding | D. bomb <u>o</u> |
| 9. A. ch <u>o</u> ke | B. ch <u>e</u> mist | C. watc <u>h</u> | D. catc <u>h</u> |
| 10. A. stov <u>e</u> | B. col <u>d</u> | C. worr <u>y</u> | D. hol <u>d</u> |
| 11. A. pleas <u>e</u> | B. re <u>a</u> d | C. h <u>e</u> ad | D. teac <u>h</u> er |
| 12. A. ear <u>s</u> | B. ey <u>e</u> s | C. hand <u>s</u> | D. chee <u>k</u> s |
| 13. A. funn <u>y</u> | B. curi <u>o</u> us | C. chubb <u>y</u> | D. lun <u>ch</u> |
| 14. A. confid <u>e</u> nt | B. kind | C. nic <u>e</u> | D. reliab <u>l</u> e |
| 15. A. sh <u>y</u> | B. prett <u>y</u> | C. curli <u>y</u> | D. pon <u>y</u> |
| 16. A. lamp <u>s</u> | B. desk <u>s</u> | C. light <u>s</u> | D. leg <u>s</u> |
| 17. A. broth <u>e</u> r | B. nos <u>e</u> | C. sof <u>a</u> | D. post <u>e</u> r |
| 18. A. c <u>a</u> reful | B. cl <u>a</u> ss | C. cit <u>y</u> | D. cupboar <u>d</u> |
| 19. A. kitc <u>h</u> en | B. ch <u>i</u> ldren | C. chat | D. choi <u>r</u> |
| 20. A. subj <u>e</u> ct | B. mus <u>i</u> c | C. stud <u>y</u> | D. lun <u>ch</u> |
| 21. A. templ <u>e</u> | B. prett <u>y</u> | C. depend | D. pencil |
| 22. A. elb <u>o</u> w | B. bow <u>l</u> | C. blow | D. cow |
| 23. A. psychol <u>o</u> gy | B. positi <u>v</u> e | C. pati <u>e</u> nt | D. pres <u>e</u> nt |
| 24. A. brilli <u>a</u> nt | B. barbec <u>u</u> e | C. clim <u>b</u> ing | D. neighb <u>o</u> ur |
| 25. A. blond <u>e</u> | B. ponytail | C. bod <u>y</u> | D. pott <u>e</u> r |
| 26. A. b <u>e</u> st | B. part | C. pie | D. pen |
| 27. A. copy | B. happ <u>y</u> | C. b <u>e</u> ast | D. pull |
| 28. A. b <u>o</u> ok | B. b <u>e</u> autiful | C. b <u>u</u> ttfly | D. professi <u>o</u> nal |
| 29. A. job | B. tab | C. pen | D. neighb <u>o</u> r |
| 30. A. airp <u>o</u> rt | B. speak | C. noteb <u>o</u> ok | D. spoon |
| 31. A. ball | B. bell | C. bag | D. park |
| 32. A. pen | B. pull | C. bath | D. pick |

- | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 33. A. <u>b</u> rother | B. <u>b</u> each | C. <u>p</u> ass | D. <u>b</u> ook |
| 34. A. <u>c</u> opy | B. <u>p</u> et | C. <u>p</u> rize | D. <u>b</u> oy |
| 35. A. <u>p</u> encil | B. <u>p</u> ocket | C. <u>b</u> ed | D. <u>p</u> each |
| 36. A. <u>k</u> ind | B. <u>c</u> onfident | C. <u>n</u> ice | D. <u>l</u> ike |
| 37. A. <u>r</u> equ <u>e</u> st | B. <u>p</u> ro <u>j</u> ect | C. <u>n</u> eck | D. <u>e</u> x <u>c</u> iting |
| 38. A. <u>f</u> oot | B. <u>b</u> ook | C. <u>f</u> ood | D. <u>l</u> ook |
| 39. A. <u>f</u> inger | B. <u>l</u> eg | C. <u>n</u> eck | D. <u>e</u> lbow |
| 40. A. <u>c</u> reati <u>v</u> e | B. <u>t</u> h <u>i</u> nk | C. <u>i</u> dea | D. <u>b</u> ig |
| 41. A. <u>p</u> ro <u>j</u> ect | B. <u>l</u> eg | C. <u>e</u> vening | D. <u>n</u> eck |
| 42. A. <u>j</u> udo | B. <u>e</u> lbow | C. <u>n</u> ose | D. <u>b</u> lond |
| 43. A. <u>g</u> ets | B. <u>b</u> ring <u>s</u> | C. <u>t</u> ake <u>s</u> | D. <u>s</u> top <u>s</u> |
| 44. A. <u>m</u> outh | B. <u>h</u> ouse | C. <u>c</u> oun <u>t</u> ry | D. <u>a</u> bout |
| 45. A. <u>w</u> ith | B. <u>m</u> ou <u>th</u> | C. <u>t</u> h <u>a</u> nks | D. <u>t</u> h <u>r</u> ee |
| 46. A. <u>s</u> ofa | B. <u>s</u> ummer | C. <u>s</u> ugar | D. <u>s</u> ound |
| 47. A. <u>c</u> ity | B. <u>s</u> pecial | C. <u>b</u> icy <u>c</u> le | D. <u>c</u> enter |
| 48. A. <u>s</u> un | B. <u>s</u> on | C. <u>s</u> uit | D. <u>s</u> ure |
| 49. A. <u>m</u> ach <u>i</u> ne | B. <u>c</u> hoice | C. <u>c</u> he <u>a</u> p | D. <u>c</u> h <u>a</u> ng <u>e</u> |
| 50. A. <u>s</u> eat | B. <u>s</u> ugar | C. <u>s</u> igh <u>t</u> | D. <u>s</u> and |

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. reliable | B. helpful | C. active | D. friendly |
| 2. A. curious | B. confident | C. competitive | D. talkative |
| 3. A. volunteer | B. basketball | C. sensitive | D. magazine |
| 4. A. hard-working | B. wonderful | C. unfriendly | D. intelligent |
| 5. A. generous | B. patient | C. attractive | D. curious |
| 6. A. backyard | B. swimming | C. cupboard | D. active |
| 7. A. prepare | B. cuisine | C. between | D. crazy |
| 8. A. peaceful | B. thrilling | C. Korean | D. rubbish |
| 9. A. historic | B. curious | C. fantastic | D. excited |
| 10. A. volunteer | B. museum | C. creative | D. department |
| 11. A. desert | B. prepare | C. wardrobe | D. palace |
| 12. A. classmate | B. lucky | C. travel | D. dislike |
| 13. A. surround | B. crazy | C. funny | D. racing |
| 14. A. serious | B. confident | C. equipment | D. interview |
| 15. A. competition | B. activity | C. reliable | D. Antarctica |

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

III. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Our class is going to ____ a picnic at the zoo on Saturday. Would you like to come with us?
A. have B. take C. pass D. go
2. It's ____ to go home. It's so late.
A. now B. sure C. time D. like
3. Please turn ____ the lights. The room is so dark.
A. with B. at C. in D. on
4. Can you ____ the tables and chairs ____ the next room? There are some more students.
A. move - to B. take - in C. move - in D. take - on
5. Daisy is very ____ to take the rest. She is a very good student.
A. kind B. confident C. friendly D. talkative
6. I like reading "Muc Tim" very much. It's my ____ magazine.
A. nice B. quick C. funny D. favourite
7. My close friend, Mai, has a ____ face and ____ hair.
A. big - black B. small - short C. round - black D. short - long
8. My best friend is kind and _____. He often makes me laugh.
A. funny B. nice C. shy D. boring
9. My brother has ____ short ____ hair.
A. a - straight B. Ø - long C. Ø - curly D. a - black
10. On Sunday Nam ____ his parents in the field as usual.
A. helps B. help C. is helping D. helping
11. On Saturday Tom's parents ____ him ____ London to see the new film.
A. are taking - to B. taking - to C. are going - to D. are going - in
12. Next summer I am working as a ____ teacher in a village near Hoa Binh City.
A. good B. nice C. favourite D. volunteer
13. The Summer Camp is for students ____ between 10 and 15.
A. age B. aged C. aging D. ages
14. We are visiting a milk farm to see ____ they ____ milk, cheese, and butter.
A. why - do B. Ø - do C. how - make D. how - do
15. Linda has ____ hair and big ____ eyes.
A. blonde - small B. a black - blue C. blonde - blue D. black - long
16. Mai is a ____ girl. She can chat with her friends all day without feeling bored.
A. talk B. talking C. talkative D. talked
17. Tom attended the English exams ____ because he prepared very well.
A. confident B. confidently C. confidential D. confidence
18. Nam's classmates like talking and studying with him because of his _____.
A. kindness B. kindly C. unkind D. unkindness

19. Nam is a(n)_____student. He spends a lot of time doing all his home work without his parents' help at home.

A. independent

B. independently

C. independence

D. dependence

20. Would you like_____ on a picnic with my family tomorrow?

A. go

B. went

C. going

D. to go

21. Tom's friends laugh a lot when he tells them some_____ stories.

A. funny

B. hard-working

C. easy

D. boring

22. He looks so_____. His face turns red when he talks with strangers.

A. friendly

B. creative

C. clever

D. shy

23. He wears thick. They make him so intelligent.

A. shoulders

B. tails

C. glasses

D. necks

24. She's very beautiful. She has long black and brown .

A. face/ fingers

B. hair/eyes

C. nose/feet

D. arm/ears

25. My younger brother has a round ____and broad .

A. shoulder/ hands

B. mouth/eyes

C. face/ shoulders

D. elbow/ cheek

26. My kids spend hours chatting _____ the phone _____ their friends.

A. at - with

B. on - to

C. to - with

D. in - about

27. Could you turn the television _____? I want to watch the news.

A. on

B. off

C. down

D. up

28. My best friend _____ a round face and big eyes.

A. have

B. has

C. is

D. gets

29. My brother is really _____. He always does his homework.

A. hard-working

B. serious

C. confident

D. patient

30. When eating, most Vietnamese people hold chopsticks in their right _____.

A. arm

B. leg

C. finger

D. hand

31. Which do you prefer, straight hair or _____ hair?

A. long

B. blonde

C. curly

D. thick

32. The kids are _____ their tricycles around the playground.

A. playing

B. riding

C. taking

D. driving

33. Norman is very shy, but his brother is _____.

A. easygoing

B. calm

C. patient

D. outgoing

34. _____ explain this grammar for me, please? ~ Sure.

A. Can you

B. Could you please

C. Would you like

D. Would you mind

35. Would you like to come for dinner tonight? - _____

A. Yes, certainly.

B. I'd love to. Thanks.

C. Not at all.

D. No, thanks.

36. His two _____ look so small and funny.
 A. nose B. neck C. ears D. eye
37. The cat is wagging its beautiful long _____.
 A. tail B. foot C. leg D. hand
38. I love sitting on my father's wide _____.
 A. arms B. knees C. shoulders D. foot
39. She looks pretty with a sharp _____ on her face.
 A. tooth B. nose C. elbow D. head
40. This baby has _____ cheeks; everyone wants to kiss them.
 A. chubby B. finger C. fur
41. Don't judge a person by his/her _____.
 A. chubby B. appearance C. neck
42. Ms. Lan has a(n) _____ lifestyle. She seems to be never bored.
 A. competitive B. active C. generous D. patient
43. My teacher is very _____. She never smiles in her lessons.
 A. serious B. confident C. reliable D. responsible
44. You need to be _____ to teach children.
 A. shy B. patient C. volunteer D. sporty
45. We are all _____ about the people who live in that villa.
 A. freedom-loving B. independent C. curious D. friendly
46. I don't like his _____. He's too serious and competitive.
 A. finger B. elbow C. personality D. leg
47. Mr. Lam was _____ of his parents when he was just 16 years old.
 A. independent B. caring C. shoulders D. sensitive
48. My mother is _____ to everyone. She loves helping others.
 A. funny B. boring C. kind D. fur
49. Don't worry. He is a _____ person. He can help you.
 A. funny B. reliable C. sensitive D. tail
50. The school year in Viet Nam starts _____ September 5th.
 A. in B. on C. at D. since

3. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. It's nice meeting such a _____ person. (FRIEND)
2. Lan is very _____. She's always on the phone, chatting to friends. (TALK)
3. Huy is very _____. He's not controlled in any way by other people or things. (DEPEND)
4. I think Jane is very _____. She is easily hurt by the (SENSE)

small things.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| 5. Viet is very _____. | He always has a lot of new ideas. | (CREATE) |
| 6. You must be _____ | when you open that door. | (CARE) |
| 7. I think you look very _____ | in that hat. | (FUN) |
| 8. Tom is the most _____ | person I've ever met | (BORE) |
| 9. I'm _____ | about the book she's supposed to be writing. | (CURIOSITY) |
| 10. You can trust John. He is very _____. | | (RELY) |
| 11. She takes an _____ | part in school life. | (ACTIVATE) |
| 12. Our countryside is _____ | at an alarming rate. | (APPEAR) |
| 13. Green is much better than _____ | old white. | (BORE) |
| 14. There is a lot of _____ | between rival airlines. | (COMPLET
E) |
| 15. She's completely lacking in _____ | | (CONFIDE) |
| 16. I'm burning with _____ | - you must tell me who won! | (CURIOUS) |
| 17. Her friends take advantage of her _____ | | (GENEROUS) |
| 18. A wedding on that scale takes a lot of _____ | | (ORGANIZE) |
| 19. Of course, this is just a _____ | | (PERSON) |
| 20. How _____ | are the local weather forecast? | (RELY) |
| 21. People in my country are very warm and _____ | | (FRIEND) |
| 22. An _____ | is a home for children whose parents are dead. | (ORPHAN) |
| 23. L.A Hill is a _____ | writer. | (HUMOR) |
| 24. I'm _____ | sorry for the delay. | (EXTREME) |
| 25. She looks more _____ | than her sister. | (BEAUTY) |

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text.

You know that moment when you meet a person and (1. INSTANT) _____ realize that you are going to be best friend? It might be as simple as you both eat burritos for most of your meals or both cry during the same State Farm commercial. Friends are the family you choose, and a good friend is (2. VALUE) _____. Would Romy be able to make it through her high school (3. UNION) _____ without awesome Michele? I think not. Would Cher be able to get over herself and (4. EVENT) _____ make out with the young hot Paul Rudd without Dion? Heck no! Building (5. FRIEND) _____ can be awkward and a bit (6. STRESS) _____. So how do you know when it's worth it to put yourself out there and make someone your new best friend?

D. VERB FORMS

I. Give the correct form of verb at the simple tense and the continuous tense.

1. Sit down! A strange dog _____ (**run**) to you.
2. My mom often _____ (**buy**) meat from the butcher's.
3. My brothers _____ (**not/ drink**) coffee at the moment.
4. Look! Those people ._____ (**climb**) the mountain so fast.
5. That girl _____ (**cry**) loudly in the party now.
6. These students always _____ (**wear**) warm clothes in summer.
7. What _____ (**you/ do**) in the kitchen?
8. I never _____ (**eat**) potatoes.
9. The 203 bus _____ (**set off**) every fifteen minutes.
10. Tonight, we _____ (**not/go**) to our teacher's wedding party.

II. Read the text then give the correct form of verb.

It (0. be) is Sunday evening and my friends and I (**1. be**) _____ Jane's birthday party. Jane (**2. wear**) _____ a beautiful long dress and (**3. stand**) _____ next to her boyfriend. Some guests (**4. drink**) _____ wine or beer in the corner of the room. Some of her relatives (**5. dance**) _____ in the middle of the room. Most people (**6. sit**) _____ on chairs, (**7. enjoy**) _____ foods and (**8. chat**) _____ with one another. We often (**9. go**) _____ to our friends' birthday parties. We always (**10. dress**) _____ well and (**11. travel**) _____ by taxi. Parties never (**12. make**) _____ us bored because we like.

III. Complete the text. Use the present simple.

My best friend

My best friend is Hannah. She (**1. live**) _____ next door to me. We (**2. go**) _____ to the same school but we are in different classes.

I (**3. walk**) _____ to school but Hannah (**4. go**) _____ by bike, because she always (**5. get up**) _____ late. After school we (**6. finish**) _____ our homework first, then we (**7. listen**) _____ to our favourite music. I (**8. like**) _____ R&B, but Hannah (**9. hate**) _____ it. She (**10. think**) _____ it's boring. She (**11. love**) _____ rock music.

IV. Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verbs in brackets in the present continuous.

Jack: I'm bored.

Nick: Why don't you find something to do?

Jack: What can I do?

Nick: There are lots of things you can do. This is what I (**1. do**) _____ this weekend. On Friday evening I (**2. meet**) _____ Jane. We (**3. go**) _____ to the cinema. Then in Saturday, Tom and I (**4. play**) _____ table-tennis. Then we (**5. have**) _____ lunch with Sam. After lunch, Tom and Sam (**6. start**) _____ their new judo classes. I (**7. not go**) _____ with them because my dad (**8. take**) _____ me to a basketball match.

It's my mum's birthday on Sunday. She **(9. not have)** _____ a big party. We **(10. have)** _____ lunch at a nice restaurant near our house.

Jack: Wow. You are busy. Can I come with you to the cinema on Friday?

Nick: Of course, you can, Jack.

5. CORRECTION

I. Choose the underlined word or phrase (marked A, B, C or D) in each sentence that needs correcting.

1. My sister is very seriously and hard-working in her study.

A B C D

2. Ride a bike at the weekend is my best friend's hobby.

A B C D

3. She is very cared, so she always helps her mother do the housework.

A B C D

4. My friend has a short brown hair and an oval face.

A B C D

5. Because Nga is very keen on the school's singing competition, she is taking part

A B C

on it tomorrow.

D

6. I have an important maths exam tomorrow afternoon, so I do a lot of maths

A B C

exercises at home this evening.

D

7. We have a lot of assignments to do. Therefore, we are going to the cinema

A B C

with you tonight.

D

8. I have new pencil, a pencil sharpener and a pencil case.

A B C D

9. The painting competition will start at his school on the 17th of October.

A B C D

10. She usually plays the piano every Monday evening, but today she watch cartoons

A B C D

with her younger sister.

11. There are a table, four chairs, two pictures and a vase in the living room.

A B C D

12. There aren't a lot of posters in the wall in his bedroom.

A B C D

13. My dog has a long tail, big eyes and a yellow fur.

A B C D

14. She has a birthday party with a big birthday cake and a lot of candles at home

A B C D

at present.

15. She is short hair and big eyes

A B C D

16. My new friend, Zoe, is very friend and helpful

A B C D

17. Tomorrow, John and I is playing basketball with our team

A B C D

18. This student are very smart, studious and well-behaved

A B C D

19. My mother have an oval face and lovely smile

A B C D

20. Would you like going to the movies tonight?

A B C D

II. There is one mistake in each sentence. Find and correct it.

Sentence	Correction
1. I live in a apartment on Nguyen Trai Street.	_____
2. Listen! Someone knocks at the door.	_____
3. What do you doing tomorrow?	_____
4. There is some new furnitures in the living room.	_____
5. My mother have short curly hair and big blue eyes.	_____
6. He drives very careless and often causes accidents.	_____
7. John usually go shopping with his mother.	_____
8. There is many books on her bookshelves.	_____
9. Would you like drinking tea or coffee?	_____
10. Why don't you has dinner with us?	_____

6. READING

I. Read the following text and use the words given in the box to fill in the le

there	real	sticking	about
are	legally	the	at

Friendship is an interesting kind of love. There's no contrast (1) _____
binding you two together, there's no unspoken rule (2) _____loving each other

unconditionally, and there's no (3) _____blinding commitment to the opposite person other than what you are willing to put in to the relationship.

But maybe these (4)_____the reasons why our relationships are so valuable. The option is always (5) _____ to back out at any time, and yet, with the really, really authentic ones, we never do.

Because (6) _____the end of the day- after the breakups and divorces and estrangements- we choose (7) _____companions we want in our lives, and they are the ones worth (8) _____around for.

II. Read the article and decide whether the statements are True (T) or False (F).

As we know, these special relationship do more than we just get us by. Friends are our concert buddies. They're the people that come over to trap a mouse that's in the apartment. They're the ones who use through relationship blunders and changes at work. Research has also found that friends helps us live longer.

Aristotle once described a true friend as a "single soul dwelling in two bodies"- but what differentiates a true, lasting friendship from the other, temporary social bonds? According to Robert Rowney, D.O., a certified psychiatrist and the director of the Cleveland Clinic mood disorder unit, there are certain habits that genuine friends possess, which make them more like family. And it's these characteristics- and sometimes even tough love – that create that indescribable bond.

1. Friends see us through relationship blunders and changes at work
2. Research has found that friend don't help us live longer
3. A true friend is described as "single soul dwelling in two bodies"
4. According to Robert Rowney, there are certain habits genuine friends possess.
5. Sometimes even tough love can't create that indescribable bond.

III. Read and answer the questions.

–Hi pals! My name is Susy. I'm thin and medium high. My hair is short, curly and blonde. My eyes are brown. I'm clever and hard-working. My favourite color is red. I love fashion.

–Hey guys! My name is Caroline. I'm thin and sporty. My hair is long, straight and brown. My eyes are brown and big also. I'm talkative and noisy. I like rock music.

–What's up people? I'm Michael. I'm tall and handsome, my hair is brown and straight. My face is round. I'm patient and kind of lazy. I always wear a cap.

–Nice to meet you! My name is Ryan. I'm skinny and short, my hair is black and my eyes are black too. I'm shy and good tempered. I like sports and video games.

–How're you doing friends? I am Kate. I'm tall and thin. My hair is short, straight and black. I have a small face. I love the green color.

1. What is Susy's hair like?

.....

2. What are Caroline's eyes like?

.....

3. What is Michael like?

.....

4. What does Ryan like?

.....

5. What color does Kate love?

.....

IV. Read the passage, then answer the questions.

Trung is a pupil in class 7A. His full name is Pham QuocTrung. He is 13 years old now, but he will be 14 on his next birthday. Trung lives with his parents at 2/34 Nguyen Trai Street. Trung's house isn't large but it's very comfortable. It has a bright living room, two lovely bedrooms and a large, modern bathroom and kitchen. There is a small yard in front of his house. Trung's mother grows flowers in the yard. According to Trung, his house is the nicest house.

1. What does Trung do?

.....

2. What class is he in?

.....

3. What's his family name?

.....

4. What's his address?

.....

5. Is Trung's house big?

.....

6. How many rooms are there in his house?

.....

7. Is there a yard in front of his house?

.....

8. Are there any flowers in the yard?

.....

7. WRITING

I. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

Ex: There are twenty classes in our school

→ *Our school has twenty classes.*

1. Our school has forty-two classrooms.

☞ There

2. The bakery is to the left of my house.

~~✗~~ My house

3. Mr Minh has a son, Trung.

~~✗~~ Mr Minh

4. Trang is riding her bike to school.

~~✗~~ Trang is going

5. Huyen walks to school every afternoon.

~~✗~~ Huyen goes

6. Does your class have forty students?

~~✗~~ Are?

7. That motorbike belongs to Mr Trung.

~~✗~~ That is

8. Does your father cycle to work?

~~✗~~ Does your father get?

9. He goes to work at seven fifteen.

~~✗~~ He goes to work at a

10. This exercise is very difficult and he can't do it.

~~✗~~ This exercise is too

II. Write the correct sentences using the cue words.

1. He/ often/ have/ breakfast/ late.

~~✗~~

2. You/ do/ the housework/ at the moment?

~~✗~~

3. I/ not/ go/ to school/ on weekends.

~~✗~~

4. John's girlfriend/ wear/ a red T-shirt/ now.

~~✗~~

5. They/ like/ beer or wine?

~~✗~~

6. What/ he/ usually/ do/ at night?

~~✗~~

7. The teacher/ never/ lose/ his temper.

~~✗~~

8. Why/ you/ listen/ to music/ loudly now?

~~✗~~

III. Arrange the words to make correct sentences.

1. books/ are/ on/ there/ bookshelf/ many/ the.

~~2~~

2.many/ there/ how/ in/ are/ books/ school bag/ your?

~~3~~

3.television/ the/ there/ a/ living room/in/ is.

~~4~~

4.forty-five/ class/ students/ there/ my/ are/ in.

~~5~~

5.living room/ tables/ in/ there/ the/ are/ two.

~~6~~

6.many/ there/ in/ how/ are/ the/ doors/ classroom?

~~7~~

IV. Write a short paragraph (80-100 words) about your best friend.

Suggestions:

1. What is his/her name?

2. How old is he/she?

3. What is his/ her hobby?

4. What does he/she do in his/ her free time?

5. What do you often do together?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ANSWER KEYS

UNIT 3: MY FRIENDS

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

1. D	11.C	21.B	31.D	41.C
2. C	12.D	22.D	32.C	42.D
3. A	13.B	23.A	33.C	43.B
4. A	14.A	24.C	34.D	44.C
5. B	15.A	25.B	35.D	45.A
6. B	16.D	26.A	36.B	46.C
7. C	17.A	27.B	37.D	47.B
8. D	18.C	28.D	38.C	48.D
9. B	19.D	29.C	39.A	49.A
10. C	20.B	30.C	40.C	50.B

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.A	4.B	7.D	10.A	13.A
2.C	5.C	8.C	11.B	14.C
3.A	6.A	9.B	12.D	15.A

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1.A	11.A	21.A	31.C	41.B
2.C	12.D	22.D	32.B	42.B
3.D	13.B	23.C	33.D	43.A
4.A	14.C	24.B	34.A	44.B
5.B	15.A	25.C	35.B	45.C
6.D	16.C	26.B	36.C	46.C
7.C	17.B	27.A	37.A	47.A
8.A	18.A	28.B	38.B	48.C
9.C	19.A	29.A	39.C	49.B
10.A	20.D	30.D	40.C	50.B

③. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. friendly	6. careful	11. active	16. curiosity	21. friendly
2. talkative	7. funny	12. disappearing	17. Generosity	22. orphanage
3. independent	8. boring	13. Boring	18. Organization	23. humorous
4. sensitive	9. curious	14. competition	19. Personal	24. extremely
5. creative	10. reliable	15. confidence	20. Reliable	25. beautiful

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text.

1. instantly	2. invaluable	3. reunion
4. eventually	5. friendships	6. stressful

④. VERB FORMS

I. Give the correct form of verb at the simple tense and the continuous tense.

1. is running	2. buys	3. aren't drinking	4. are climbing	5. is crying
---------------	---------	--------------------	-----------------	--------------

6. wear	7. are you doing	8. eat	9. sets off	10. aren't going
---------	------------------	--------	-------------	------------------

II. Read the text then give the correct form of verb.

1. are	4. are drinking	7. enjoying	10. dress
2. is wearing	5. are dancing	8. chatting	11. travel
3. standing	6. are sitting	9. go	12. make

III. Complete the text. Use the present simple.

1. lives	4. goes	7. listen	10. thinks
2. go	5. gets up	8. like	11. loves
3. walk	6. finish	9. hates	

IV. Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verbs in brackets in the present continuous.

1. am doing	2. am meeting	3. are going	4. are playing	5. are having
6. are starting	7. am not going	8. is taking	9. isn't having	10. are having

5. CORRECTION

I. Choose the underlined word or phrase in each sentence that needs correcting.

1.A	6.C	11.A	16.C
2.A	7.C	12.C	17.B
3.B	8.A	13.D	18.B
4.B	9.B	14.A	19.A
5.D	10.D	15.A	20.B

II. There is one mistake in each sentence. Find and correct it.

1. a → an	2. knocks → is knocking	3. do → are	4. furnitures → furniture	5. have → has
6. careless → carelessly	7. go → goes	8. is → are	9. drinking → to drink	10. has → have

6. READING

I. Read the following text and use the words given in the box to fill in the le

1. legally	2. about	3. real	4. are
5. there	6. at	7. the	8. sticking

II. Read the text and decide whether the statements are True (T) or False (F).

1. T	2. F	3. T	4. T	5. F
------	------	------	------	------

III. Read and answer the questions.

1. It is short, curly, and blonde.

2. They are brown and big.
3. He is patient and kind of lazy.
4. He likes sports and video games.
5. She loves green.

IV. Read the passage, then answer the questions.

1. He is a student.
2. He is in class 7A.
3. His family name is Pham.
4. It is at 2/34 Nguyen Trai Street.
5. No, it isn't.
6. There are five rooms.
7. Yes, there is.
8. Yes, there are.

7. WRITING

I. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. There are forty-two classrooms in our school.
2. My house is to the right of the bakery.
3. Mr. Minh is Tiling's father.
4. Trang is going to school by bike.
5. Huyen goes to school on foot every afternoon.
6. Are there forty students in your class?
7. That is Trung's motorbike.
8. Does your father get to work by bike?
9. He goes to work at a quarter past seven.
10. This exercise is too difficult for him to do.

II. Write the correct sentences using the cue words.

1. He often has breakfast late.
2. Are you doing the housework at the moment?
3. I do not go to school on weekends.
4. John's girlfriend is wearing a red T-shirt now.
5. Do they like beer or wine?
6. What does he usually do at night?

7. The teacher never loses his temper.
8. Why are you listening to music loudly now?

III. Arrange the words to make correct sentences.

1. There are many books on the bookshelf.
2. How many books are there in your school bag?
3. There is a television in the living room.
4. There are forty-five students in my class.
5. There are two tables in the living room.
6. How many doors are there in the classroom?

IV. Write a short paragraph (80-100 words) about your best friend.

Suggestions:

1. What is his/her name?
2. How old is he/she?
3. What is his/ her hobby?
4. What does he/she do in his/ her free time?
5. What do you often do together?

UNIT 4: MY NEIGHBOURHOOD

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- statue /'stætʃ·u/ (n): tượng
- square /skweər/ (n): quảng trường
- railway station /'reɪl.weɪ ,steɪ.ʃən/ (n): nhà ga
- cathedral /kə'thi·drəl/ (n): nhà thờ
- memorial /mə'mɔ:r.i.əl/ (n): đài tưởng niệm
- left /left/ (n, a): trái
- right /raɪt/ (n, a): phải
- straight /streɪt/ (n, a): thẳng
- narrow /'ner.oʊ/ (a): hẹp
- noisy /'nɔɪ.zi/ (a): ồn ào
- crowded /'kraʊ.dɪd/ (a): đông đúc
- quiet /'kwaɪ ɪt/ (a): yên tĩnh
- art gallery /'ɑ:t ,gæl.ər.i/ (n): phòng trưng bày các tác phẩm nghệ thuật
- backyard /,bæk'jɑ:rd/ (n): sân phía sau nhà
- cathedral /kə'thi·drəl/ (n): nhà thờ lớn, thánh đường
- convenient /kən'veɪn·jənt/ (adj): thuận tiện, thuận lợi
- dislike /dɪs'laɪk/ (v): không thích, không ưa, ghét
- exciting /ɪk'saɪ.tɪŋ/ (adj): thú vị, lý thú, hứng thú
- fantastic /fæn'tæs·tɪk/ (adj): tuyệt vời
- historic /hɪ'stɔr ɪk/ (adj): cổ, cổ kính
- inconvenient /,ɪn·kən'veɪn·jənt/ (adj): bất tiện, phiền phức
- incredibly /ɪn'kred·ə·bli/ (adv): đáng kinh ngạc, đến nỗi không ngờ
- modern /'mɒd·ərn/ (adj): hiện đại
- pagoda /pə'gɔʊ·də/ (n): ngôi chùa

- palace /'pæl·əs/ (n): cung điện, dinh, phủ
- peaceful /'pis·fəl/ (adj): yên tĩnh, bình lặng
- polluted /pə'lut/ (adj): ô nhiễm
- suburb /'sʌb·ʒrb/ (n): khu vực ngoại ô
- temple /'tem·pəl/ (n): đền, điện, miếu
- terrible /'ter·ə·bəl/ (adj): tồi tệ
- workshop /'wɜrkʃɑp/ (n) phân xưởng (sản xuất, sửa chữa...)

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

I. COMPARATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES (So sánh với tính từ)

1. Cấu trúc:

Tính từ ngắn : S1 + tobe + adj (er) + than + S2

Tính từ dài : S1 + tobe + more + adj + than + S2

Ví dụ : This book is smaller than that book. (*Quyển sách này nhỏ hơn quyển sách kia*)

This book is more expensive than that book. (*Quyển sách này đắt hơn quyển sách kia*)

2. Cách thành lập tính từ so sánh hơn.

a. Tính từ ngắn : (hay còn gọi là tính từ 1 âm tiết. Khi thành lập tính từ so sánh hơn, chúng ta thường thêm đuôi ER vào phía sau tính từ đó.)

Adjective	Comparative
short (<i>thấp</i>)	shorter (<i>thấp hơn</i>)
small (<i>nhỏ</i>)	smaller (<i>nhỏ hơn</i>)
long (<i>dài</i>)	longer (<i>dài hơn</i>)

Ví dụ: The green box is smaller than the pink box. (*Chiếc hộp màu xanh nhỏ hơn chiếc hộp màu hồng.*)

- Với những tính từ có 1 âm tiết và có đuôi kết thúc là chữ cái **-e**, khi thành lập tính từ so sánh hơn, chúng ta sẽ chỉ thêm đuôi **-r** vào phía sau tính từ đó.

Adjective	Comparative
large (<i>rộng</i>)	larger (<i>rộng hơn</i>)
strange (<i>lạ</i>)	stranger (<i>lạ hơn</i>)

close (gần)	closer (gần hơn)
-------------	------------------

Ví dụ: This lake is larger than that lake. (Cái hồ này rộng hơn cái hồ kia.)

- Với những tính từ có 1 âm tiết và có kết thúc bằng 1 nguyên âm và 1 phụ âm, khi thành lập tính từ so sánh hơn, chúng ta gấp đôi phụ âm cuối rồi thêm **-er**.

Adjective	Comparative
big (to)	bigger (to hơn)
hot (nóng)	hotter (nóng hơn)
thin (gầy)	thinner (gầy hơn)

Ví dụ: The woman is thinner than the man. (Người phụ nữ gầy hơn người đàn ông.)

b. Tính từ dài : (Tính từ có 2 âm tiết trở lên)

Với hầu hết các tính từ có 2 âm tiết trở lên, chúng ta thường thêm **more** vào phía trước tính từ đó để thành lập tính từ so sánh hơn.

Adjective	Comparative
Beautiful (xinh, đẹp)	More beautiful (xinh đẹp hơn)
Interesting (thú vị)	More interesting (thú vị hơn)
Exciting (hào hứng)	More exciting (hào hứng hơn)

Ví dụ: Gold is more valuable than silver. (Vàng có giá trị hơn bạc.)

c. Tính từ so sánh hơn đặc biệt

- Tuy nhiên, có một số tính từ dài không theo quy luật trên, tính từ có 2 âm tiết mà kết thúc là đuôi -y ở cuối thì y biến đổi thành i sau đó thêm ER

Ví dụ:

pretty => prettier

happy => happier

Các em cùng theo dõi một số dạng tính từ so sánh hơn đặc biệt như sau:

Adjective	Comparative
good (tốt)	better (tốt hơn)
bad (tồi tệ)	worse (tồi tệ hơn)
much/ many (nhiều)	more (nhiều hơn)
little (ít)	less (ít hơn)
far (xa)	farther/ further (xa hơn)

Ví dụ:

Kate's speaking skill is **better** than Pete's. (*Kỹ năng nói của Kate tốt hơn kỹ năng nói của Pete.*)

C. BÀI TẬP:

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. A. mach <u>i</u> ne | B. dr <u>i</u> ve | C. pol <u>i</u> ce | D. p <u>i</u> zza |
| 2. A. magaz <u>i</u> ne | B. s <u>i</u> de | C. h <u>i</u> de | D. h <u>i</u> gh |
| 3. A. prep <u>a</u> re | B. fr <u>e</u> sh | C. <u>e</u> qual | D. <u>e</u> leven |
| 4. A. b <u>u</u> sy | B. g <u>u</u> m | C. s <u>u</u> mmary | D. l <u>u</u> nc <u>h</u> |
| 5. A. k <u>i</u> te | B. <u>i</u> dea | C. road <u>s</u> ide | D. d <u>i</u> nn <u>e</u> r |
| 6. A. p <u>i</u> cture | B. t <u>i</u> cket | C. b <u>i</u> ology | D. c <u>i</u> ne <u>m</u> a |
| 7. A. the <u>s</u> e | B. met <u>r</u> e | C. s <u>e</u> cret | D. <u>E</u> nglish |
| 8. A. l <u>i</u> sten | B. magaz <u>i</u> ne | C. m <u>i</u> ss | D. k <u>i</u> te |
| 9. A. t <u>e</u> ach | B. h <u>e</u> art | C. p <u>e</u> ach | D. t <u>e</u> am |
| 10. A. b <u>u</u> siness | B. b <u>u</u> s | C. n <u>u</u> number | D. s <u>t</u> udy |
| 11. A. l <u>i</u> ve | B. w <u>i</u> de | C. b <u>i</u> cycle | D. exc <u>i</u> ting |
| 12. A. f <u>e</u> t | B. s <u>e</u> at | C. n <u>e</u> ar | D. t <u>e</u> am |
| 13. A. cr <u>i</u> ed | B. c <u>i</u> ty | C. th <u>i</u> nk | D. terr <u>i</u> ble |
| 14. A. gr <u>e</u> at | B. h <u>e</u> at | C. ch <u>e</u> ek | D. p <u>e</u> aceful |
| 15. A. h <u>i</u> st <u>o</u> ric | B. exp <u>e</u> n <u>s</u> ive | C. off <u>i</u> ce | D. f <u>i</u> nally |
| 16. A. p <u>e</u> aceful | B. p <u>l</u> ea <u>s</u> ure | C. sl <u>e</u> ep <u>y</u> | D. ch <u>e</u> ap |
| 17. A. exc <u>i</u> ting | B. q <u>u</u> iet | C. w <u>i</u> de | D. terr <u>i</u> ble |
| 18. A. crow <u>d</u> ed | B. inter <u>e</u> st <u>e</u> d | C. bor <u>e</u> d | D. poll <u>u</u> t <u>e</u> d |
| 19. A. sh <u>o</u> p <u>s</u> | B. the <u>a</u> tr <u>e</u> s | C. str <u>e</u> et <u>s</u> | D. p <u>a</u> rk <u>s</u> |
| 20. A. n <u>a</u> rr <u>o</u> w | B. crow <u>d</u> | C. n <u>o</u> w | D. ab <u>o</u> ut |
| 21. A. h <u>i</u> ll | B. sh <u>i</u> p | C. k <u>i</u> te | D. ch <u>i</u> p |
| 22. A. ch <u>e</u> ap | B. gr <u>e</u> at | C. p <u>e</u> ace | D. m <u>e</u> al |
| 23. A. <u>e</u> vening | B. <u>e</u> xtreme | C. sc <u>e</u> ne | D. <u>e</u> xcite |
| 24. A. gar <u>a</u> ge | B. vill <u>a</u> ge | C. mess <u>a</u> ge | D. shor <u>t</u> age |
| 25. A. f <u>i</u> eld | B. mov <u>i</u> e | C. qu <u>i</u> et | D. p <u>i</u> ece |
| 26. A. f <u>i</u> lms | B. c <u>i</u> ty | C. n <u>i</u> ce | D. pol <u>i</u> te |
| 27. A. b <u>i</u> g | B. w <u>i</u> de | C. qu <u>i</u> et | D. exc <u>i</u> ting |
| 28. A. ch <u>e</u> ap | B. sl <u>e</u> ep <u>y</u> | C. n <u>e</u> ar | D. p <u>e</u> aceful |
| 29. A. h <u>e</u> avy | B. s <u>e</u> a | C. t <u>e</u> am | D. str <u>e</u> et |
| 30. A. bl <u>e</u> ed | B. h <u>e</u> at | C. h <u>e</u> ad | D. t <u>e</u> a |
| 31. A. arr <u>i</u> ve | B. qu <u>i</u> ckly | C. h <u>i</u> st <u>o</u> ric | D. c <u>i</u> ty |

32. A. <u>teens</u>	B. <u>see</u>	C. <u>coffee</u>	D. <u>street</u>
33. A. <u>convenient</u>	B. <u>evening</u>	C. <u>exciting</u>	D. <u>eve</u>
34. A. <u>expensive</u>	B. <u>opposite</u>	C. <u>those</u>	D. <u>noisy</u>
35. A. <u>ideal</u>	B. <u>cinema</u>	C. <u>exciting</u>	D. <u>difficult</u>
36. A. <u>sorry</u>	B. <u>speak</u>	C. <u>soft</u>	D. <u>shoes</u>
37. A. <u>lesson</u>	B. <u>short</u>	C. <u>wash</u>	D. <u>finish</u>
38. A. <u>cinema</u>	B. <u>sugar</u>	C. <u>mansion</u>	D. <u>tissue</u>
39. A. <u>sing</u>	B. <u>special</u>	C. <u>social</u>	D. <u>artificial</u>
40. A. <u>sheet</u>	B. <u>sad</u>	C. <u>show</u>	D. <u>shut</u>
41. A. <u>love</u>	B. <u>hotel</u>	C. <u>mother</u>	D. <u>brother</u>
42. A. <u>lake</u>	B. <u>place</u>	C. <u>paddy</u>	D. <u>stadium</u>
43. A. <u>store</u>	B. <u>sister</u>	C. <u>factory</u>	D. <u>picture</u>
44. A. <u>rice</u>	B. <u>river</u>	C. <u>city</u>	D. <u>village</u>
45. A. <u>sing</u>	B. <u>mine</u>	C. <u>hit</u>	D. <u>sit</u>
46. A. <u>finger</u>	B. <u>lip</u>	C. <u>light</u>	D. <u>thin</u>
47. A. <u>bean</u>	B. <u>pea</u>	C. <u>meat</u>	D. <u>heavy</u>
48. A. <u>desert</u>	B. <u>meter</u>	C. <u>tent</u>	D. <u>never</u>
49. A. <u>dozen</u>	B. <u>box</u>	C. <u>bottle</u>	D. <u>body</u>
50. A. <u>farm</u>	B. <u>bar</u>	C. <u>tall</u>	D. <u>car</u>

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1. A. pollute	B. temple	C. station	D. palace
2. A. receipt	B. backyard	C. palace	D. dislike
3. A. exciting	B. terrible	C. cathedral	D. historic
4. A. organize	B. zodiac	C. serious	D. fantastic
5. A. memorial	B. convenient	C. generous	D. appearance
6. A. football	B. compare	C. ceiling	D. table
7. A. cleaning	B. duty	C. beauty	D. pollute
8. A. volunteer	B. engineer	C. benefit	D. Vietnamese
9. A. tradition	B. opera	C. different	D. capital
10. A. gallery	B. dangerous	C. referee	D. personal
11. A. pleasure	B. hurry	C. arrive	D. statue
12. A. decide	B. railway	C. temple	D. palace
13. A. restaurant	B. terrible	C. gallery	D. expensive
14. A. capital	B. pagoda	C. countryside	D. motorbike
15. A. direction	B. afternoon	C. cathedral	D. fantastic

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. No one else in the class plays the guitar_____John.
A.as well B. as far as C. so well as D. as soon as
2. The town was nearer_____we thought it would be.
A. then B.that C. as D. than
3. The economic conditions today are _____ they were in the past.
A. much more good B. much better than
C. much better D. the best than
4. Jane is not_____her brother.
A. more intelligent as B. intelligent as
C. so intelligent as D. so intelligent that
5. He drives as_____his father does.
A. careful as B. more carefully
C. the most careful D. carefully as
6. I'll be there _____I can.
A. sooner as B. no sooner as C. as soon as D. soonest as
7. Mr. Lam cannot earn _____his wife.
A.as many money as B. as much money as
C.as many money than D. as much money than
8. I like English _____French.
A. than B. more C. less D. better than
9. My car is_____yours.
A. more fast and economical than B. more fast and more economical than
C. faster and economical as D. faster and more economical than
10. Of the two sisters, Linda_____.
A. is beautiful B. the most beautiful
C. is more beautiful D. is so beautiful as
11. Is there a theatre _____your neighbourhood?
A. in B. on C. at D. with
12. _____the second turning the right.
A. Take - in B. Take - on C. Get - in D. Get - on
13. _____nice the weather is!
A. What B. How C. Which D. Who
14. The map_____that the art gallery is nearer than the cathedral. Shall we go there first?
A. speaks B. asks C. says D. talks
15. A_____is a place where we go to buy stamps or send letters.
A. library B. post office C. cinema D. school
16. The air in this area is_____with smoke from factories.
A. polluted B. fresh C. noisy D. clean
17. There are many shops near here, so the streets are very busy and _____during the day.

A. noise B. narrow C. quiet D. noisy

18. It is _____ to live far from the market and the supermarket.

A. easy B. inconvenient C. convenient D. comfortable

19. The people in Hoi An are incredibly _____ and _____.

A. friendly – help B. friendly – helpful

C. friendship - helpless D. friend - helpfully

20. The weather is nice, so I enjoy doing _____ activities.

A. outdoor B. inside C. outdoors D. boring

21. The cinema is _____ the corner of the street.

A. on B. in C. at D. into

22. Going by taxi is more _____ than going by bus.

A. cheaper B. faster C. easier D. expensive

23. The streets in the Old Quarter in Ha Noi are not wide. They are _____.

A. exciting B. noisy C. narrow D. quiet

24. A _____ is a place where we can buy medicines, soap, and make-up.

A. chemist's B. grocer's C. square D. temple

25. David's exam results are _____ than Nick's.

A. good B. well C. better D. important

26. Janet is not happy because her results in the competition are _____ than her sister's.

A. bad B. good C. better D. worse

27. _____ people own motorbikes now than ten years ago.

A. Many B. Much C. More D. Some

28. This type of car is _____ economical than that type.

A. more B. much C. many D. as

29. _____ go past the traffic lights, and _____ turn left.

A. First - than B. First - then C. Then - first D. Finally - then

30. London, the capital city of England, is a _____ city with many old buildings, and beautiful parks.

A. history B. historic C. largest D. larger

31. When you ride your bike on the streets, you should follow the directions of the _____.

A. bus stop B. traffic lights C. railway station D. palace

32. I want to see famous paintings, so I'm going to visit a(n) _____ at the weekend.

A. art gallery B. temple C. cathedral D. square

33. My father took me to the _____ to commemorate the national heroes

A. bridge B. stadium C. statue D. memorial

34. I couldn't have a trip to Hoi An Ancient Town because I caught a cold last week.

That was so _____ for me.

A. convenient B. quiet C. simple D. terrible

35. He likes living in Da Nang City because the people here are _____ hospitable.
 A. incredibly B. inconveniently
 C. noisily D. busily
36. She doesn't like moving in the rush hours because the traffic is so _____.
 A. heavy B. large C. difficult D. exciting
37. First _____ the second left. Then go ahead. You will see the museum.
 A. turn/ away B. take/ straight C. go/ right D. pick/ left
38. _____ can I get to 899 Cafe? - Go to the end of Hong Bang Road. It's _____ your right.
 A. Where/ on B. Where/ in C. How/ on D. How/ in
39. Ho Chi Minh City has _____ streets than Da Lat City.
 A. crowded B. much crowded C. more crowded D. crowdedly
40. I like the atmosphere in Can Tho. It's _____ than in Ha Noi.
 A. more quiet B. quieter C. quiet D. quietly
41. What is there _____ our neighborhood?
 A. in B. on C. at D. from
42. Turn left _____ the traffic lights and the restaurant is _____ your right
 A. in - on B. at - in C. at - on D. on - in
43. _____ the second turning on the right and then go straight.
 A. Cross B. Get C. Turn D. Take
44. He is much _____ now, but he's still taking medication.
 A. good B. gooder C. better D. more better
45. The air in many cities is heavily _____ with vehicle exhaust fumes.
 A. polluted B. crowded C. wasted D. contained
46. I'm just going to the _____ to buy some medicines and bandage.
 A. cinema B. chemist's C. restaurant D. grocery
47. My neighborhood is very _____ because everything is near my house.
 A. convenient B. exciting C. comfortable D. inconvenient
48. _____ go to the museum this weekend? - Good idea!
 A. Let's B. Why don't C. Shall we D. Could you
49. Living in a city is _____ convenient than living in the countryside.
 A. a lot B. much C. many D. more
50. - Is there a supermarket in your neighborhood?
 - _____.
 A. No, it isn't. The supermarket is near my house.
 B. Yes. There is one not far from my house.
 C. There is a supermarket in my neighborhood.
 D. The supermarket is opposite the park.

3. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. It is a great.....to have the school so near. (CONVENIENT)
2. In the spring the place is.....with skiers. (CROWD)
3. I still find the job..... (EXCITE)
4. The area is of special.....interest. (HISTORY)
5. The conceit of that man is.....! (CREDIT)
6. Thestands on the village green. (MEMORY)
7. Unfortunately we lack the resources to..... (MODERN)
8. They hope for a.....settlement of the dispute. (PEACE)
9.on British beaches is a serious problem. (POLLUTE)
10. He is.....confident that they can succeed. (QUIET)
11. Ha Noi is a ____capital. There are a lot of famous, ancient museums, pagodas or temples. (FAME)
12. He bought a new car in order to move _____in a big city (CONVENIENT)
13. The environment in our city is ____with a lot of dirty gases from private cars. (POLUTE)
14. I like enjoying clean air and _____in the countryside. (PEACE)
15. Don't go straight ahead. It's very_____ (DANGER)
16. My neighborhood is _____for good and cheap restaurants (FAME)
17. They are getting along with their_____. (NEIGHBORHOOD)
18. She 's beautiful with a_____ smile. (LOVE)
19. _____, the barber cut my hair too short. (LUCK)
20. Each of my friends has a _____character. (DIFFER)

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text

Sometimes good,(1. FRIEND)_____ neighbors are hard to come by. When you do have a kind, good neighbor nearby, it (2. REAL) _____goes a long way. So what (3.ACTUAL)_____makes a good neighbor and how can we be the (4.GOOD)_____neighbor? Here is a good way we can be great to those we live around. Be considerate. Notice the time of day and what others might be going through. Noise levels can be huge issue with neighbors (5. SPECIAL)_____late at night. Does the family next to you have small children that go to bed early? Then don't blast your music super loud with the windows open at 11:00 p.m. Is there an (6.OLD)_____person who has a hard time getting around? Bring their mail up to

their house on days with poor weather. Let's try to be the best neighbor. It will make life much more (**7. PLEASE**)_____for everyone!

4. VERB FORMS

I. Give the correct form of verbs in the blank.

1. Hoa always (**help**)_____her parents on their farm in her free time.
2. Our summer vacation (**start**)_____ in June and (**last**)_____for almost three months.
3. What do you like (**do**)_____during your vacation?
4. It's ten to seven. Hurry up or you (**be**)_____late for work.
5. We (**go**)_____swimming every afternoon.
6. Hoa (**have**) _____ breakfast with her uncle now.
7. He (**not come**)_____to the party tomorrow night.
8. They (**talk**) _____about Hoa's work at the moment.

II. Put the verbs into the correct tense form.

1. I _____ (**have**) a great time in Hoi An at present
2. There _____ (**be**) always a lot of traffic, day and night.
3. My friend, Michelle, and I _____ (**spend**) five days in Hoi An last year.
4. Outside the sun _____ (**shine**) so I'm off to get some fresh air.
5. We usually _____ (**stay**) at home for a holiday, but this holiday we _____ (**travel**) abroad.
6. _____ (**be**) there any bookstores in your neighborhood?
7. My grandma _____ (**not like**) living in the city.
8. How _____ (**I/ get**) to the railway station? - Go straight ahead then turn left.
9. Where _____ (**you/ go**) now? - We _____ (**go**) to Tan Ky House.
10. _____ (**be**) there a post office nearby? - No. There _____ (be) no post offices near here.

III. Give the right form of "have" or "be" in the simple present tense.

- a. Nick (1)_____ good-looking. He (2)_____ tall and strong. He (3)_____ short curly hair. He (4)_____ a round face and brown eyes. His mouth (5)_____ wide.
- b. Ann and Laura are twins. They (6)_____ oval faces and big eyes. They (7)_____ tall and slim. Ann (8)_____ long black hair, but Laura (9)_____ short curly hair. Ann has full lips, but Laura's lips (10)_____ thin.

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of *do* or *play*.

1. Do you often _____ exercises?
2. My Dad _____ football for the town team when he was young.
3. My sister enjoys _____ exercises table tennis in her free time.
4. My brother _____ basketball for the school team.

5. We _____ gymnastics at school yesterday.
6. I like _____ tennis.
7. My friend _____ judo twice a week.
8. My mother _____ yoga at the new sports centre.

5. CORRECTION

Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. There is a temple near to the museum.
A B C D
2. Is there a photocopy store to the left your house?
A B C D
3. The police station is front of the movie theater.
A B C D
4. The bakery is between the hotel or the restaurant.
A B C D
5. There are two drugstores opposite to the hospital.
A B C D
6. Take the first turns on the right, and then go past the bus, Son.
A B C D
7. Because there are many factories in the suburbs of this city, so the air is very polluted.
A B C D
8. I like most of the things in Nha Trang such as friendly people, sand beaches and delicious seafood.
A B C D
9. The old song is more sleepy than that one I heard yesterday.
A B C D
10. Your city has narrow streets and older buildings than ours.
A B C D
11. This restaurant is more excited and cheaper than that one.
A B C D
12. The parks in this town are larger and greener than that in that town.
A B C D
13. Do you know how much does it cost to fly to Australia?
A B C D
14. Remember to wash and ironing your own clothes every day.
A B C D
15. They often go to bed early and never get up lately.

16. To keep fit and stay healthily, you should exercise regularly.
A B C D
17. It's getting easier for me to write and I make less mistake.
A B C D
18. Play football is one of the most common ways of relaxing.
A B C D
19. John doesn't work so hardly as Peter, but he is much more careful than Peter.
A B C D
20. Each student studying chemistry have to spend at least three hours per week in the laboratory.
A B C D
21. The most problematical of the four major language skills are probably that of writing.
A B C D
22. She wants to go to Ho Chi Minh City to begin her career like a singer.
A B C D
23. Please arrive early so that we can start the meeting at time.
A B C D
24. There are a cat and a dog near the table.
A B C D
25. The bank is between the hotel with the museum.
A B C D
26. There is two drug stores in that street.
A B C D
27. Is there a photocopy store to the left your house?
A B C D
28. The food here is more delicious as that in my hometown.
A B C D
29. Do you think there is another mountain highest than Mount Everest?
A B C D
30. Ha Long Bay is the more beautiful natural wonder of Viet Nam.
A B C D

6. READING

I. Read the passage carefully. True or False? Check (✓). Then correct the false sentences and write them in your exercise book.

A new shopping mall is opening in Nam's neighborhood today. It is very different from the present shopping area. All the shops are under one roof. That will be very

convenient, especially during the hot and humid summer months. Customers will shop in comfort and won't notice the weather.

Some people in the neighborhood, however, are not happy about the changes. The owners of the small stores on Tran Phu Street think the mall will take their business. Some of the goods in the new stores will be the same as the ones in the small shops, but the stores in the mall will offer a wider selection of products, some at cheaper prices.

The residents and store owners have been concerned about the new mall for a few months. They have organized a community meeting in order to discuss the situation.

	T	F
1. The mall is open six days a week.		
2. There are more than 50 stores in the mall.		
3. Everyone in the neighborhood is pleased with the new mall.		
4. It will be more comfortable to shop in the mall than in the present shopping area.		
5. Some of the stores on Tran Phu Street may have to close.		

II. Read and complete the text with available words.

jobs	historical	center	education
universities	modern	capital	landscapes

I live in a large city in the (1) _____ of Columbia. It is called Santa Fe de Bogota and is the (2) _____ of Columbia. It is a large and populous city. The city is surrounded by high mountains, rivers, and amazing (3) _____.

The city centre is expensive and noisy. It is also dangerous at night. People are always running and rushing for their (4) _____, schools and other work. Traffic is awful too. Therefore I do not like this area too much. My city also has many great (5) _____, as well as some important libraries. Many people travel to this city for its growing (6) _____.

In addition, there are about 160 shopping malls. Some most famous malls are: Centro Andino, Santafé and Centro Mayor. If you like quiet space, you can visit the (7) _____ area. There are interesting places that are full of history and culture such as La Casa de la Moneda, the elegant and big Colon Theater. If you prefer (8) _____ places, you can go and drink a cup of coffee at the modern Hard Rock Café in Atlantis Plaza mall.

III. Read the text in exercise II again and answer the questions.

1. In what country does Santa Fe de Bogota belong to?

.....

2. What is the city surrounded by?

.....
3. What's the city centre like?

.....
4. What are people always running for?

.....
5. What is the education in the city like?

.....
6. How many shopping malls are there?

IV. Read the text and decide which answer best fits each numbered blank.

Does your neighbor have an (1) _____lawn, shutters with peeling paint, or siding that needs (2) _____.power washed? You might assume that they're (3) _____, but there might be a bigger problem that you're not aware (4) _____

The family may be dealing with (5) _____, or their lawnmower broke down and they can't afford a new one. Offer to help with whatever the problem is in a (6) _____, non condemning manner. Perhaps you can move their lawn (7) _____them or offer your power sprayer if they don't have one. This lets them know you care about the (8) _____of the neighborhood, and you're on their side.

If they get upset about your kindness, that becomes their problem, not yours.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. overgrow | B. overgrows | C. overgrew | D. overgrown |
| 2. A. to be | B. be | C. being | D. been |
| 3. A. neglect | B. neglectful | C. neglectfully | D. neglecting |
| 4. A. at | B. in | C. of | D. with |
| 5. A. sick | B. sickness | C. sickly | D. sicken |
| 6. A. to respect | B. respect | C. respectful | D. respectfully |
| 7. A. at | B. from | C. under | D. for |
| 8. A. appear | B. appearance | C. disappear | D. disappearance |

7. WRITING

I. Write the comparative sentences using the cues.

Ex: *My house/ small/ her house*

→*My house is smaller than her house.*

1. Lan/tall/Hoa

~~✗~~

2. This book/ thick/ that book

~~✗~~

3. The chair/ short/ the table

~~✍~~

4. These boxes/ big/ those boxes

~~✍~~

5. Miss Trang/ young/ her sister

~~✍~~

6. These buildings/ high/ those buildings

~~✍~~

7. The boys/ strong/ the girls

~~✍~~

8. I/ old/ my brother.

~~✍~~

II. Rearrange the words and phrases to make meaningful sentences.

1. an/ pagoda/ village/ go/ old/ my/ has.

~~✍~~

2. railway-station/ not/ small/ a/ that/ town/ has/ got.

~~✍~~

3. one/ Mr. and Mrs. Brown/ only/ have/ car/ got.

~~✍~~

4. building/ school/new/ has got/ my/ a.

~~✍~~

5. many/ got/ city/ lakes/ that/ has/ beautiful.

~~✍~~

6. London/ parks/ has/ famous/ got/ many.

~~✍~~

7. any/ city/ museums/ your/ has/ got?

~~✍~~

8. art galleries/ not/town/ has/ got/ this/ any.

~~✍~~

9. buildings/ old/ got/ Hue/ pagodas/ and/ many/ has.

~~✍~~

10. a/ house/has/ got/ garage/ your?

~~✍~~

III. Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets. Do not change the meaning of the sentences and do not change the form of the words given.

Example: Tom is taller than Mary. (SHORT)

Mary is shorter than Tom.

1. The Central Post Office is bigger than this District Post office. (SMALL)

~~✍~~

2.The skyscraper is higher than our office building. (LOW)

~~✍~~

3.My neighbourhood is noisier than your neighbourhood. (QUIET)

~~✍~~

4.Alice is slimmer than Daisy. (FAT)

~~✍~~

5.The Riverview Hotel is cheaper than the Palace Hotel. (EXPENSIVE)

~~✍~~

6. A house in the city is more expensive than a house in the country. (CHEAP)

~~✍~~

7.The air in the city is more polluted than the air in the country. (FRESH)

~~✍~~

8. Life in the city is more interesting than life in a small village. (BORING)

~~✍~~

IV. Write a short paragraph (80-100 words) describing the place where you are living or a quiet countryside.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

=====

ANSWER KEYS

UNIT 4: MY NEIGHBOURHOOD

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

1. B	11.A	21.C	31.A	41.B
2. A	12.C	22.B	32.C	42.C
3. B	13.A	23.C	33.A	43.D
4. A	14.A	24.A	34.A	44.A
5. D	15.D	25.C	35.A	45.B
6. C	16.B	26.C	36.D	46.C
7. C	17.D	27.A	37.A	47.D
8. D	18.C	28.C	38.B	48.B
9. B	19.B	29.A	39.A	49.A
10. A	20.A	30.C	40.B	50.C

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.A	4.D	7.D	10.C	13.D
2.C	5.C	8.C	11.C	14.B
3.B	6.B	9.A	12.A	15.B

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1.C	11.A	21.A	31.B	41.A
2.D	12.B	22.D	32.A	42.C
3.B	13.B	23.C	33.D	43.D

4.C	14.A	24.A	34.D	44.C
5.D	15.B	25.C	35.A	45.A
6.C	16.A	26.D	36.A	46.B
7.B	17.D	27.C	37.B	47.A
8.A	18.B	28.A	38.C	48.C
9.D	19.B	29.B	39.C	49.D
10.C	20.A	30.B	40.B	50.B

③. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. convenience	6. memorial	11. famous	16. famous
2. Crowded	7. Modernize	12. conveniently	17. neighbors
3. Exciting	8. Peaceful	13. polluted	18. lovely
4. Historic	9. Pollution	14. peacefulness	19. Unluckily
5. Incredible	10. Quietly	15. dangerous	20. different

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text

1. friendly	2. really	3. actually	4. best
5. especially	6. elderly	7. pleasant	

④. VERB FORMS

I. Give the correct form of verbs in the blank.

1. helps	2. starts – lasts	3. to do/ doing	4. will be
5. go	6. is having	7. won't come	8. are talking

II. Put the verbs into the correct tense form.

1. am having	2. is	3. spent	4. is shining	5. stay - are travelling
6. Are	7. doesn't like	8. do I get	9. are you going - are going	10. Is - are

III. Give the right form of "have" or "be" in the simple present tense.

1. is	2. is	3. has	4. has	5. is
6. have	7. are	8. has	9. .has	10. are

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of *do* or *play*.

1. do	2. played	3. playing	4. plays
5. do	6. playing	7. does	8. does

5. CORRECTION

I. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

1.C	6.B	11.A	16.B	21.D	26.A
2.C	7.C	12.C	17.C	22.D	27.C
3.B	8.C	13.C	18.A	23.A	28.C
4.C	9.B	14.B	19.A	24.A	29.D
5.C	10.A	15.D	20.B	25.C	30.B

6. READING

I. Read the passage carefully. True or False? Check (R). Then correct the false sentences and write them in your exercise book.

	T	F
1. The mall is open six days a week. -> The mall is open seven days a week		(R)
2. There are more than 50 stores in the mall. -> There are 50 stores in the mall.		(R)
3. Everyone in the neighborhood is pleased with the new mall. -> Not everyone is pleased with the mall.		(R)
4. It will be more comfortable to shop in the mall than in the present shopping area.	(R)	
5. Some of the stores on Tran Phu Street may have to close.	(R)	

II. Read and complete the text with available words.

1. center	2. capital	3. landscapes	4. jobs
5. universities	6. education	7. historical	8. modern

III. Read the text in exercise II again and answer the questions.

1. Columbia
2. It is surrounded by high mountains, rivers, and amazing landscapes.
3. It is expensive and noisy, and dangerous at night.
4. They are always running for their jobs, schools and other work.
5. It is growing.
6. There are about 160 shopping malls.

IV. Read the following text and decide which answer best fits each numbered blank.

1. D	2.A	3.B	4.C
5. B	6.C	7.D	8. B

7. WRITING

I. Write the comparative sentences using the cues.

1. Lan is taller than Hoa.
2. This book is thicker than that book.
3. The chair is shorter than the table.
4. These boxes are bigger than those boxes.
5. Miss Trang is younger than her sister.
6. These buildings are higher than those buildings.
7. The boys are stronger than the girls.
8. I am older than my brother.

II. Rearrange the words and phrases to make meaningful sentences.

1. My village has an old pagoda.
2. That small town has not got a railway-station.
3. Mr. and Mrs. Brown have got only one car.
4. My school has got a new building.
5. That city has got many beautiful lakes.
6. London has got many famous parks.
7. Has your city got any museums?
8. This town has not got any art galleries.
9. Hue has got many old buildings and pagodas.
10. Has your house got a garage?

III. Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets. Do not change the meaning of the sentences and do not change the form of the words given.

1. This District Post Office is smaller than the Central Post Office.
2. Our office building is lower than the skyscraper.
3. Your neighbourhood is quieter than my neighbourhood.

4. Daisy is fatter than Alice.
5. The Palace Hotel is more expensive than the Riverview Hotel.
6. A house in the country is cheaper than a house in the city.
7. The air in the country is fresher than the air in the city.
8. Life in a small village is more boring than life in the city.

UNIT 5: NATURAL WONDERS OF THE WORLD

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- plaster /'plæs·tər/ (n): miếng băng dán
- walking boots /'wɔː.kɪŋ buts/ (n): giày ống đi bộ
- painkiller /'peɪn.kɪl·ər/ (n): thuốc giảm đau
- sun cream /'sʌn ,kri:m/ (n): kem chống nắng
- scissor /'sɪz.ər/ (n): cái kéo
- sleeping bag /'sli·pɪŋ ,bæg/ (n): túi ngủ
- backpack /'bæk.pæk/ (n): ba lô
- compass /'kʌm·pəs/ (n) la bàn
- desert /dɪ'zɜrt/ (n) sa mạc
- mountain /'mʌʊn·tən/ (n): núi
- lake /leɪk/ (n): hồ nước
- river /'rɪv·ər/ (n): sông
- forest /'fɔr·əst/ (n): rừng
- waterfall /'wɔː.t̬ər.fɔl/ (n): thác nước
- Antarctica /æn'tɑːrk.tɪ.kə/ (n): châu Nam cực
- boat /boʊt/ (n): con thuyền
- boot /bu:t/ (n): giày ủng
- cave /keɪv/ (n): hang động
- cuisine /kwɪ'zi:n/ (n): kỹ thuật nấu ăn, nghệ thuật ẩm thực
- diverse /'daɪ·vɜrs/ (adj): đa dạng
- essential /ɪ'sen·ʃəl/ (adj): rất cần thiết
- island /'aɪ.lənd/ (n): hòn đảo
- rock /rɒk/ (n): hòn đá, phiến đá
- thrilling /'θrɪl·ɪŋ/ (adj) (gây): hồi hộp

- torch /tɔ:tʃ/ (n): đèn pin
- travel agent's /'træv·əl eɪ·dʒənt/(n) công ty du lịch
- valley /'væl·i/ (n): thung lũng
- windsurfing /'wɪnd,sɜ:r·fɪŋ/ (n): môn thể thao lướt ván buồm
- wonder /'wʌn·də/ (n): kỳ quan

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

I. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES OF SHORT ADJECTIVES

(DẠNG SO SÁNH HƠN VÀ SO SÁNH HƠN NHẤT CỦA TÍNH TỪ NGẮN)

1. Nếu tính từ một âm tiết kết thúc bằng “E”, chỉ cần thêm “R” vào đằng sau tính từ để tạo thành dạng so sánh hơn và “ST” vào đằng sau tính từ để tạo thành dạng so sánh nhất.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
Large	Larger	Largest
Wide	Wider	Widest
Nice	Nicer	Nicest

2. Nếu tính từ một âm tiết kết thúc bằng một phụ âm và có một nguyên âm đứng trước phụ âm đó thì **nhân đôi phụ âm cuối**, rồi thêm đuôi “ER” (so sánh hơn) hoặc “EST” (so sánh nhất).

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
Big	Bigger	Biggest
Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
Fat	Fatter	Fattest

3. Các tính từ thông thường thì ta chỉ cần thêm “er” hoặc “est” vào đằng sau của tính từ.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
Tall	Taller	Tallest
Long	Longer	Longest
Short	Shorter	Shortest

4. Trường hợp tính từ bất quy tắc.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
Good	Better	Best
Bad	Worse	Worst
Far	Farther/ Further	Farthest/ Furthest
Little	Less	Least

II. MODAL VERB: MUST

Modal verbs là nhóm động từ rất quen thuộc với mọi người học tiếng Anh. Bài học ngày hôm nay chúng ta sẽ làm quen với động từ khuyết thiếu “**Must**”.

MUST là một động từ khuyết thiếu và chỉ có hình thức hiện tại.

1. Cấu trúc:

Dạng khẳng định : **S + Must + V-infinitive.**

Dạng phủ định : **S + Mustn't + V-infinitive.**

Dạng phủ định : **Must + S + V-infinitive?**

2. Cách dùng:

a. **MUST** có nghĩa là “phải” diễn tả một mệnh lệnh hay một sự bắt buộc.

Ví dụ:

You must drive on the left in London. (*Ở Luân Đôn bạn phải lái xe bên tay trái.*)

b. **MUST** bao hàm một kết luận đương nhiên, một cách giải thích duy nhất hợp lý theo ý nghĩ của người nói.

Ví dụ:

You have worked hard all day. You must be tired. (*Bạn đã làm việc cả ngày. Bạn phải rất mệt.*)

c. **MUST NOT (MUSTN'T)** diễn tả một lệnh cấm.

Ví dụ:

You mustn't walk on the grass. (*Bạn không được giẫm lên cỏ.*)

d. Khi muốn diễn tả thể phủ định của **MUST** với ý nghĩa “không cần thiết” người ta sử dụng **NEED NOT (NEEDN'T)**.

Ví dụ:

Must I do it now? – No, you needn't. (*Tôi có phải làm nó ngay không. Không, bạn không cần.*)

C. BÀI TẬP:

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

1. A. <u>full</u>	B. <u>must</u>	C. <u>under</u>	D. <u>uncle</u>
2. A. <u>seat</u>	B. <u>meal</u>	C. <u>seal</u>	D. <u>great</u>
3. A. <u>hike</u>	B. <u>life</u>	C. <u>lit</u>	D. <u>light</u>
4. A. <u>gate</u>	B. <u>hate</u>	C. <u>great</u>	D. <u>feast</u>
5. A. <u>tin</u>	B. <u>sin</u>	C. <u>hide</u>	D. <u>Jim</u>
6. A. <u>book</u>	B. <u>foot</u>	C. <u>poor</u>	D. <u>look</u>
7. A. <u>solder</u>	B. <u>story</u>	C. <u>folk</u>	D. <u>folder</u>
8. A. <u>tale</u>	B. <u>hang</u>	C. <u>land</u>	D. <u>hand</u>
9. A. <u>slang</u>	B. <u>danger</u>	C. <u>fang</u>	D. <u>sang</u>
10. A. <u>watched</u>	B. <u>booked</u>	C. <u>stopped</u>	D. <u>worried</u>
11. A. <u>forest</u>	B. <u>wonder</u>	C. <u>rock</u>	D. <u>lost</u>
12. A. <u>cave</u>	B. <u>bay</u>	C. <u>valley</u>	D. <u>lake</u>
13. A. <u>boots</u>	B. <u>scissors</u>	C. <u>caves</u>	D. <u>mountains</u>
14. A. <u>diverse</u>	B. <u>island</u>	C. <u>scissors</u>	D. <u>right</u>
15. A. <u>beach</u>	B. <u>cheese</u>	C. <u>change</u>	D. <u>chemistry</u>
16. A. <u>matches</u>	B. <u>parades</u>	C. <u>decides</u>	D. <u>relatives</u>
17. A. <u>clothing</u>	B. <u>hold</u>	C. <u>poster</u>	D. <u>dove</u>
18. A. <u>comb</u>	B. <u>climb</u>	C. <u>suburb</u>	D. <u>bomb</u>
19. A. <u>although</u>	B. <u>thinking</u>	C. <u>gather</u>	D. <u>other</u>
20. A. <u>headline</u>	B. <u>heating</u>	C. <u>meal</u>	D. <u>leave</u>
21. A. <u>red</u>	B. <u>tent</u>	C. <u>end</u>	D. <u>forest</u>
22. A. <u>lake</u>	B. <u>bag</u>	C. <u>take</u>	D. <u>nature</u>
23. A. <u>island</u>	B. <u>plaster</u>	C. <u>cost</u>	D. <u>longest</u>
24. A. <u>map</u>	B. <u>area</u>	C. <u>hat</u>	D. <u>plan</u>
25. A. <u>post</u>	B. <u>cost</u>	C. <u>question</u>	D. <u>coast</u>
26. A. <u>top</u>	B. <u>ten</u>	C. <u>tomato</u>	D. <u>future</u>
27. A. <u>stand</u>	B. <u>stamps</u>	C. <u>steal</u>	D. <u>sure</u>
28. A. <u>hat</u>	B. <u>plan</u>	C. <u>area</u>	D. <u>map</u>
29. A. <u>coast</u>	B. <u>cost</u>	C. <u>island</u>	D. <u>dust</u>
30. A. <u>makes</u>	B. <u>writes</u>	C. <u>takes</u>	D. <u>drives</u>
31. A. <u>eating</u>	B. <u>reading</u>	C. <u>teaching</u>	D. <u>breakfast</u>
32. A. <u>school</u>	B. <u>children</u>	C. <u>cheek</u>	D. <u>chubby</u>
33. A. <u>exciting</u>	B. <u>city</u>	C. <u>bicycle</u>	D. <u>circle</u>
34. A. <u>teaching</u>	B. <u>speaking</u>	C. <u>wearing</u>	D. <u>meaning</u>
35. A. <u>end</u>	B. <u>palace</u>	C. <u>central</u>	D. <u>send</u>
36. A. <u>tradition</u>	B. <u>decorate</u>	C. <u>make</u>	D. <u>April</u>
37. A. <u>gathering</u>	B. <u>generous</u>	C. <u>guest</u>	D. <u>great</u>
38. A. <u>spring</u>	B. <u>speak</u>	C. <u>should</u>	D. <u>summer</u>
39. A. <u>truck</u>	B. <u>unload</u>	C. <u>turn</u>	D. <u>lunch</u>

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 40. A. polic <u>em</u> an | B. s <u>i</u> gn | C. b <u>i</u> ke | D. sp <u>i</u> der |
| 41. A. d <u>a</u> ngerous | B. t <u>r</u> avel | C. m <u>a</u> n | D. t <u>r</u> aff <u>i</u> c |
| 42. A. s <u>t</u> ay | B. vacat <u>i</u> on | C. l <u>a</u> ng <u>u</u> age | D. w <u>a</u> ste |
| 43. A. ph <u>o</u> to | B. h <u>o</u> tel | C. badm <u>i</u> nt <u>o</u> n | D. h <u>o</u> m <u>e</u> work |
| 44. A. pop <u>u</u> lation | B. b <u>u</u> s | C. <u>u</u> ncle | D. s <u>u</u> mm <u>e</u> r |
| 45. A. r <u>e</u> ad | B. t <u>e</u> ach | C. h <u>e</u> ad | D. <u>e</u> at |
| 46. A. s <u>ch</u> ool | B. <u>ch</u> ild | C. <u>ch</u> air | D. wat <u>ch</u> |
| 47. A. book <u>s</u> | B. pen <u>s</u> | C. chair <u>s</u> | D. liv <u>e</u> s |
| 48. A. cab <u>l</u> e | B. stat <u>i</u> on | C. <u>a</u> nsw <u>e</u> r | D. lat <u>e</u> st |
| 49. A. kit <u>ch</u> en | B. cat <u>ch</u> | C. <u>ch</u> em <u>i</u> str <u>y</u> | D. arm <u>ch</u> air |
| 50. A. help <u>e</u> d | B. want <u>e</u> d | C. sound <u>e</u> d | D. suggest <u>e</u> d |

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A. back <u>y</u> ard | B. rem <u>o</u> te | C. Kor <u>e</u> an | D. des <u>e</u> rt |
| 2. A. deg <u>re</u> e | B. fore <u>s</u> t | C. plas <u>t</u> er | D. won <u>d</u> er |
| 3. A. sub <u>u</u> rb | B. rem <u>o</u> te | C. stat <u>i</u> on | D. tem <u>p</u> le |
| 4. A. orga <u>n</u> ize | B. zodi <u>a</u> c | C. essent <u>i</u> al | D. water <u>f</u> all |
| 5. A. muse <u>m</u> | B. windsurf <u>i</u> ng | C. histor <u>i</u> c | D. pag <u>o</u> da |
| 6. A. thrill <u>i</u> ng | B. surround | C. trav <u>e</u> l | D. island |
| 7. A. vall <u>e</u> y | B. mod <u>e</u> rn | C. qui <u>e</u> t | D. cuisin <u>e</u> |
| 8. A. divers <u>e</u> | B. mounta <u>i</u> n | C. empt <u>y</u> | D. rac <u>i</u> ng |
| 9. A. appeara <u>n</u> ce | B. water <u>f</u> all | C. cathedr <u>a</u> l | D. essent <u>i</u> al |
| 10. A. gall <u>e</u> ry | B. seri <u>s</u> ious | C. memor <u>i</u> al | D. barbec <u>u</u> e |
| 11. A. des <u>e</u> rt | B. pictu <u>r</u> e | C. mounta <u>i</u> n | D. riv <u>e</u> r |
| 12. A. natur <u>a</u> l | B. pain <u>k</u> iller | C. import <u>a</u> nt | D. water <u>f</u> all |
| 13. A. experie <u>n</u> ce | B. necessa <u>r</u> y | C. forgett <u>a</u> ble | D. tradit <u>i</u> onal |
| 14. A. ar <u>o</u> und | B. beg <u>i</u> n | C. divers <u>e</u> | D. summ <u>e</u> r |
| 15. A. anim <u>a</u> l | B. attract <u>i</u> on | C. essent <u>i</u> al | D. umbrell <u>a</u> |

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- Ha Long Bay is famous _____ its scenic rock formations.
A. to B. with C. for D. by
- Titov island in Ha Long Bay was named _____ a Russian cosmonaut, GhermannTitov.
A. for B. with C. after D. by
- You _____ look at other students' work. It's against the rules.
A. must B. should C. shouldn't D. mustn't
- The Sahara is the third largest _____ in the world.

- A. island B. desert C. valley D. mountain
5. When hiking overnight, don't forget to bring the _____. It will keep you warm at night.
A. sleeping bag B. hiking boots C. sun cream D. painkillers
6. The Amazon River is _____ river in the world.
A. the wider B. wider than C. the widest D. widest
7. _____ is the coldest place in Vietnam?
A. Who B. What C. Which D. When
8. Peter must _____ this essay today. He's going out tomorrow.
A. finish B. finishes C. finishing D. to finish
9. Which is _____, the West Lake or the Sword Lake?
A. large B. larger C. largest D. the largest
10. The Grand Canyon is one of the natural _____ of the world.
A. materials B. sights C. scenery D. wonders
11. The weather is very hot in _____. You can see camels and rattlesnakes easily there.
A. valley B. ocean C. desert D. mountain
12. Cam Ly _____ in Lam Dong Province attracts many tourists to visit each year.
A. Island B. Waterfall C. Highland D. Forest
13. My sister had a headache yesterday when she returned from her camping. My mother gave her some _____ to reduce it.
A. painkillers B. plaster C. sun cream D. cool water
14. My brother and I wear _____ to move conveniently when we go hiking in the mountain.
A. walking boots B. scissors C. backpacks D. waterproof coat
15. We brought a _____ to look around when we move in the jungle in the dark.
A. tent B. mobile phone C. sun hat D. torch
16. I had an occasion to come to visit Ngu Hanh Son. It's a mountain _____ in Da Nang.
A. land B. range C. mount D. rock
17. Those islands in Nha Trang are named _____ some interesting animals such as monkeys or swiftest.
A. around B. in C. after D. by
18. It is _____ to check your luggage carefully when you travel somewhere by plane.
A. unusual B. attractive C. essential D. exciting
19. Ba Be Lake in Bac Kan is _____ natural lake in Viet Nam.
A. the largest B. the large C. largest D. more large
20. Many people say that Nile is _____ river in the world.
A. the deepest B. deeper C. the longest D. longer
21. I think Nam is one of _____ tour guides in this company.
A. the best B. the better C. best D. better

22. What is __mountain in Viet Nam? -I think it's Fansipan.
 A. the height B.the highest C. the higher D. highest
23. We _____ get up early to be at the campsite in time.
 A. can B. must C. can't D. mustn't
24. You_____throw the rubbish into the West Lake.
 A. may B. must C. mustn't D. may not
25. We _____ hold a party tonight but we _____make some loud noises affecting our neighbours.
 A. must/ mustn't B. mustn't/ must C. can/ must D. can/ mustn't
26. "Do you finish packing"? – "Yes. All my things are in my _____"
 A. back B. backpack C. back pack D. plaster
- 27.Ha Long Bay is Vietnam's_____ wonder.
 A. most beautiful natural B. most natural beautiful
 C. the most beautiful natural D. the most natural beautiful
- 28.The Amazon _____ .
 A. Rain forest B. Rainy Forest C. Wet Forest D. Wetter Forest
- 29._____is a large thick bag for sleeping in, especially when you are camping.
 A.A sleeping bag B.A sleep bag C. A sleepy bag D.A bag for sleeping
30. If we had a_____, we wouldn't get los.
 A. backpack B. ruler C. compass D. pain killer
31. You_____ travel alone to the mountain. Always go in a group.
 A. must B. mustn't C. do D. don't
32. People think Ayers Rock is_____ in the evening when it is red.
 A. good B. better C. best D. the best
33. You_____ take a lot of warm clothes when you go to Sa Pa in winter
 A. must B. mustn't C. can D. can't
34. Ba Be Lake is the largest_____ lake in Viet Nam.
 A. fresh B. freshwater C. water D. mount
35. The Imperial City in Hue is the greatest_____.
 A. tourist attraction B. tourist attractions C. tour attraction D. attraction tourist
36. Ha Long Bay is the number one_____ in Viet Nam.
 A. nature wonder B. natural wonder C. wonderful nature D. wonder nature
37. You_____ be late for school. It's against the school regulations.
 A. must B. mustn't C. can D. can't
38. You_____ all necessary things along with you before you start your trip.
 A. takes B. won't take C. must take D. mustn't take
39. The boat trip to Ca Mau, the southern tip of Viet Nam, was_____ experience of my life.

- A. good B. better C. best D. the best
40. You must remember to bring a _____ - it's very useful when you go into a cave because it's very dark there.
- A. scissors B. torch C. clock D. compass
41. He works _____ we do.
- A. harder B. as hard as C. harder D. so hard as
42. No one in this class is _____ Jimmy.
- A. so tall as B. tall than C. the tallest D. more tall than
43. Apples are usually _____ oranges.
- A. cheap than B. more cheap C. the cheapest D. cheaper than
44. I know him _____ than you do.
- A. better B. more well C. good D. the best
45. Marie is not _____ intelligent _____ her sister.
- A. more/as B. so/so C. so/as D. the/of
46. The Sears Tower is _____ building in Chicago.
- A. taller B. the more tall C. the tallest D. taller and taller
47. Your bike is 3 times _____.
- A. as fastly as mine B. as fast as me C. as fast as mine D. faster than mine
48. The fatter I become, the _____ I run.
- A. quicker B. more slowly C. slower D. more fast
49. He learns English _____ than we do.
- A. badly B. badlier C. more badly D. worse
50. Their house is _____ beautiful than mine.
- A. as B. more C. much D. so

3. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. A trip to Fan Si Pan is an _____ experience. (FORGET)
2. You can watch (tradition) _____ when you visit Sa Pa. (TRADITION)
3. Many visitors think that the greatest _____ in Hue is temples. (ATTRACT)
4. You must take an umbrella because it's _____ in Mui Ne at this time of year. (RAIN)
5. Hue is near Da Nang, but it's more _____ than Da Nang. (INTEREST)
6. The Perfume River is the most _____ river in Central Viet Nam. (FAME)
7. You can join many exciting _____ during the festival. (ACT)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 8. A butterfly is more _____ than a moth. | (COLOUR) |
| 9. Nam's brother is a _____. He took that picture. | (PHOTOGRAPH) |
| 10. Excuse me. I'd like some _____ about the cruise. | (INFORM) |
| 11. I find the enormous _____ of life on earth quite overwhelming. | (DIVERSE) |
| 12. The books on this list are _____ reading for the course. | (ESSENCE) |
| 13. The book is a _____ adventure story. | (THRILL) |
| 14. We are looking for exponential growth in our _____ | (INVEST) |
| 15. All that gossip about Linda is just pure _____ | (INVENT) |
| 16. Children are allowed much more _____ these days. | (FREE) |
| 17. He's been _____ for the past six months | (JOB) |
| 18. A group of _____ people set up camp in the field. | (TRAVEL) |
| 19. The Great Wall of China is the world's _____ structure. | (LONG) |
| 20. Is Quang Ninh a _____ province? | (MOUNTAIN) |

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text

Most visitors view the canyon from South Rim (1. **VIEW**)_____stations. Considering that it has taken the Colorado River the past 17 million years to carve this wonder out of rock, it seems only fair to take a (2. **CLOSE**)_____look. Built by the National Park Service in 1924, the South Kaibab Trail takes you to the (3.**WONDER**)_____named “Ooh Ah Point”, and, for the (4. **ADVENTURE**)_____, further into the canyon's (5.**DEEP**)_____. Plan (6. **CARE**)_____heat stroke is no fun.

In the northwest corner of Arizona,(7. **VISIT**)_____usually head to South Rim Village (120 kilometers northwest of Flagstaff on route 180) or the North Rim Village. Free shuttle buses service the South Rim in summer months. Ranger-led day hikes and walks take place throughout the year.

4. VERB FORMS

I. Complete the sentences with *must* or *mustn't*.

- You _____ help your mother with the heavy box.
- It's very cold. You _____ go out.
- You _____ look after the house when your parents are away.
- You _____ wash your face in the morning.
- You _____ take your umbrella because it's raining.
- You _____ drink that milk, it's very hot.
- You _____ make noise in the class.

8. It's dangerous, you _____ touch that wire.
9. You _____ be rude to your teacher.
10. In the class, you _____ study hard.

II. Put the verbs in brackets into Present simple or Present continuous.

1. Sit down! A strange dog **(run)** _____ to you.
2. My mom often **(buy)** _____ meat from the butcher's.
3. My brothers **(not/ drink)** _____ coffee at the moment.
4. Look! Those people **(climb)** _____ the mountain so fast.
5. That girl **(cry)** _____ loudly in the party now.
6. These students always **(wear)** _____ warm clothes in summer.
7. What **(you/ do)** _____ in the kitchen?
8. I never **(eat)** _____ potatoes.
9. The 203 bus **(set off)** _____ every fifteen minutes.
10. Tonight we **(not/ go)** _____ to our teacher's wedding party.

III. Complete the sentences with the verb+-ing.

<i>do</i>	<i>practise</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>ski</i>	<i>swim</i>	<i>watch</i>
-----------	-----------------	-------------	------------	-------------	--------------

1. John loves _____ judo.
2. They enjoy _____ the Olympics on TV.
3. We really like _____ in the Alps in winter.
4. Sam hates _____ rugby but he likes football.
5. I don't like _____ in the pool at the sport centre.
6. Do you like _____ running in the morning?

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.

1. The Great Wall of China is the world's longer structure.
A B C D
2. Traveling by tram is most convenient than traveling by car in this city.
A B C D
3. You must taking off your shoes before entering this room.
A B C D
4. Do you think there is another mountain highest than Mount Everest?
A B C D
5. Ha Long Bay is the more beautiful natural wonder of Viet Nam.
A B C D

6. The scenery of the Amazon rainforest in your pictures looks incredibly.
A B C D
7. In my opinion, foreign tourists visit Hoi An just to its ancient houses.
A B C D
8. Missouri is longer river in the USA, but it is shorter than the Amazon.
A B C D
9. Meghalaya in India has more rainy or wettest weather in the world.
A B C D
10. Lang Son is one of the coldest province in North Viet Nam.
A B C D
11. You mustn't cheat in exams because the teacher will punish you when you do that.
A B C D
12. I'm so worried because I mustn't be at home after school right now.
A B C D
13. It is more interesting book I have ever read.
A B C D
14. What's the better film you have ever seen?
A B C D
15. You mustn't look after the house when your parents are away
A B C D
16. It is raining heavily outside. You shouldn't bring your raincoat.
A B C D
17. She always give presents to her parents on Tet holiday.
A B C D
18. She will helps her mother decorate the house before Tet.
A B C D
19. I don't think that lucky money can bring us good and bad luck.
A B C D
20. The New Year Festival in Thailand is on April. It is very hot.
A B C D

II. These is a mistake in each of these sentences. Underline the mistake and then correct it.

Sentence	Correction
----------	------------

1. I'm the younger person in my family. _____
2. My brother is busyer than I am. _____
3. Mary is taller that her sister. _____
4. Zhang is from China. She speaks China. _____
5. Ha Noi have a population of 3.6 million _____
6. London is smallest than Mexico City. _____
7. She's my friend. She's from French. _____
8. Is your kitchen biger than my kitchen? _____
9. How height is the PETRONAS Twin Towers? _____
10. Which season is coldest in your country. _____

6. READING

I. Read the following text and decide which answer best fits each numbered blank.

Like other high peaks in (1) _____ region, Mount Everest has long been revered by local people. Its most common Tibetan (2) _____, Chomolungma, means "Goddess Mother of the World", (3) _____ "Goddess of the Valley". The Sanskrit name Sagarmatha means (4) _____ "Peak of Heaven". Its identity as the highest point on the Earth's (5) _____ was not recognized, however, until 1852, (6) _____ the governmental Survey of India established that fact. (7) _____ 1865 the mountain- previously referred to as Peak XV- was (8) _____ for Sir George Everest, British survey or general of India from 1830 to 1843.

1. A. one B. a C. an D. the
2. A. title B. name C. selection D. label
3. A. nor B. with C. or D. and
4. A. literally B. literate C. literal D. illiterate
5. A. covering B. plane C. surface D. facet
6. A. whose B. who C. why D. when
7. A. in B. on C. with D. between
8. A. rename B. renamed C. renaming D. to rename

II. Read the following text and use the words given in the box to fill in the blanks

vacation	island	flights	wild
thousands	center	and	here

Just off the coast of South Korea, Jeju Island pulls in vacationers and honeymooners by the (1) _____

Even if you haven't just gotten married, a (2) _____ here sure can feel like it. Regular direct (3) _____ to and from international cities such as Tokyo, Osaka, Beijing (4) _____ Shanghai (as well as South Korea's domestic airports) and liberal visa requirements also make getting (5) _____ a nap.

Jeju (6) _____ features a volcanic Hallasan commanding the island from the (7) _____, a 224-kilometer semi-tropical forested national park, a (8) _____ coastline dotted with waterfalls and the longest lava tube in the world.

III. Read the following text and answer the question below.

One of the greatest attraction in Africa and one of the most spectacular waterfalls in the world, Victoria Falls is located on the Zambezi River, the fourth largest river in Africa, which is also defining the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe.

Victoria Falls is the only waterfall I the world with a length of more than a kilometer and a height of more than hundred meters. It is also considered to be the largest fall I the world.

The noise of Victoria Falls can be heard from a distance of 40 kilometers, while the spray and mist from the falling water is rising to a height of over 400 meters and can be seen from a distance of 50 kilometers. No wonder that the local tribes used to call the waterfall Mosi-o-Tunya “The smoke that thunders”.

1. Where is Victoria Falls located?

.....

2. What is the length and the height of Victoria Falls?

.....

3. How far can the noise of Victoria Fall be heard?

.....

4. How far can we see the spray and mist?

.....

5. What do the local tribes used to call Victoria Falls?

.....

7. WRITING

I. Use the structure “What+(a/ an) + adj + noun!” to make exclamative sentences.

Ex: - The girl is very beautiful. → What a beautiful girl!

1. The weather is very awful. →

2. The meal is very delicious. →

3. The boy is very clever. →

4. The pictures are very colorful. →

5. The dress is very expensive. →

6. The milk is sour. →

II. Write full sentences, using the suggested words and phrases given.

1. Mexico City/ big/ city/ world.

~~✍~~

2. My brother's room/ big/ my room.

~~✍~~

3. London/ small/ Tokyo.

~~✎~~

4. Hung/ short/ Ba.

~~✎~~

5. Fansipan/ high mountain/ Viet Nam.

~~✎~~

6. Nam/ tall/ boy/ his class.

~~✎~~

7. Thoa/ beautiful/ girl/ village.

~~✎~~

8. The pagoda/ tall/ the temple.

~~✎~~

III. Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. Ho Chi Minh City with the population of over 8 million is bigger than any other cities in Viet Nam.

Ho Chi Minh City is the

2. Angel Falls is over 1,000 feet higher than any other falls in the world.

Angel Falls is

3. Lake Superior in North America is a freshwater lake; it is larger than any other freshwater lakes in the world.

Lake Superior in North America is

4. Remember to bring the compass: if not we will get lost in the forest.

You must

5. Take a waterproof coat during your trip to Fansipan Mountain because it is rainy there.

You

6. It is very important that you arrive on time at school.

.....

7. It is very dangerous to walk alone after 10 pm in that park.

You

8. Taking a boat trip around the islands in Ha Long Bay is the most important thing of the trip.

You

9. Antarctica is colder than any other place in the world.

Antarctica is

10. It is wrong of us to write on the walls or tables in our classroom.

IV. Write a short paragraph (80-100 words) describing the place where you have ever visited.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

=====

ANSWER KEYS

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

1. A	11.B	21.D	31.D	41.A
2. D	12.C	22.B	32.A	42.C
3. C	13.A	23.A	33.C	43.C
4. D	14.C	24.D	34.C	44.A
5. C	15.D	25.C	35.B	45.C
6. C	16.A	26.D	36.A	46.A
7. B	17.D	27.D	37.B	47.A
8. A	18.C	28.C	38.C	48.C
9. B	19.B	29.C	39.C	49.C
10. D	20.A	30.D	40.A	50.A

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.D	4.C	7.D	10.C	13.B
2.A	5.A	8.A	11.A	14.D
3.B	6.B	9.C	12.C	15.A

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences

1.C	11.C	21.A	31.B	41.B
2.C	12.B	22.B	32.D	42.A
3.D	13.A	23.B	33.A	43.D
4.B	14.A	24.C	34.B	44.A
5.A	15.D	25.D	35.A	45.C
6.C	16.B	26.B	36.B	46.C
7.B	17.C	27.A	37.B	47.C
8.A	18.C	28.A	38.C	48.C
9.B	19.A	29.A	39.D	49.D
10.D	20.C	30.C	40.B	50.B

3. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. unforgettable	6. famous	11. diversity	16. Freedom
2. traditionalism	7. activites	12. Essential	17. jobless
3. attraction	8. colourful	13. Thrilling	18. Travelling
4. rainy	9. photographer	14. Investment	19. longest
5. interesting	10. information	15. invention	20. mountainous

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text.

1. viewing	2. closer	3. wonderfully	4. adventurous
5. depths	6. carefully	7. visitors	

4. VERB FORMS

I. Complete the sentences with *must* or *mustn't*.

1. must	2. mustn't	3. must	4. must	5. must
6. mustn't	7 mustn't	8. mustn't	9. mustn't	10. must

II. Put the verbs in brackets into Present simple or Present continuous.

1. is running	2. buys	3. aren't drinking	4. are climbing	5. is crying
6. wear	7. are you doing	8. eat	9. set offs	10. aren't going

III. Complete the sentences with the verb+-ing.

1. doing	2. watching	3. skiing
4. playing	5. swimming	6. practising

5. CORRECTION**I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.**

1.D	6.D	11.A	16.C
2.B	7.C	12.B	17.A
3.A	8.A	13.A	18.B
4.D	9.B	14.B	19.D
5.B	10.C	15.A	20.B

II. These is a mistake in each of these sentences. Underline the mistake and then correct it.

1. younger → youngest	2. busyer → busier	3. that → than	4. China → Chinese	5. have → has
6. smallest → smaller	7. French → France	8. biger → bigger	9. height → high	10. coldest → the coldest

6. READING**I. Read the following text and decide which answer best fits each numbered bank**

1. D	2.B	3.C	4.A
5. C	6.D	7.A	8. B

II. Read the following text and use the words given in the box to fill in the blank

1. thousands	2. Vacation	3. Flights	4. And
5. here	6. Island	7. Center	8. Wild

III. Read the following text and answer the questions below

1. It is located on the Zambezi River.
2. It is more than a kilometer long and more than hundred meters high.
3. It can be heard from a distance of 40 kilometers.

4. It can be seen from a distance of 50 kilometers.
5. They call it Mosi-o-Tunya “The smoke that thunders”.

7. WRITING

I. Use the structure “What+(a/ an) + adj + noun!” to make exclamative sentences.

1. What awful weather!
2. What delicious meal!
3. What a clever boy!
4. What colorful pictures!
5. What an expensive dress!
6. What sour milk!

II. Write full sentences, using the suggested words and phrases given.

1. Mexico City is the biggest city in the world.
2. My brother’s room is bigger than my room.
3. London is smaller than Tokyo.
4. Hung is shorter than Ba.
5. Fansipan is the highest mountain in Viet Nam.
6. Nam is the tallest boy in his class.
7. Thoa is the most beautiful girl in the village.
8. The pagoda is taller than the temple.

III. Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. Ho Chi Minh City is the biggest city in Viet Nam.
2. Angel Falls is the highest fall in the world.
3. Lake Superior in North America is the largest freshwater lake in the world.
4. You must bring the compass; if not we will get lost in the forest.
5. You must take a waterproof coat during your trip to Fansipan Mountain because it is rainy there.
6. You must arrive on time at school.
7. You mustn’t walk alone after 10 pm in that park.
8. You must take a boat trip around the islands in Ha Long Bay.
9. Antarctica is the coldest place in the world.
10. We mustn’t write on the walls or tables in our classroom.

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- flower /'flaʊ·ər/ (n): hoa
- firework /'faɪr.wɜ:k/ (n): pháo hoa
- lucky money /'lʌk i 'mʌn i/ (n): tiền lì xì
- apricot blossom /'eɪ.prɪ.kɑ:t 'blɒs·əm/ (n): hoa mai
- peach blossom /pitʃ 'blɒs·əm/ (n) hoa đào
- make a wish: ước một điều ước
- cook special food: nấu một món ăn đặc biệt
- go to a pagoda: đi chùa
- decorate /'dek·ə'reɪt/ (v): trang trí, trang hoàng
- decorate our house: trang trí nhà của chúng ta
- plant trees: trồng cây
- watch fireworks: xem pháo hoa
- hang a calendar: treo một cuốn lịch
- give lucky money: cho tiền lì xì
- do the shopping: mua sắm
- visit relative: thăm người thân
- buy peach blossom: mua hoa đào
- clean furniture: lau chùi đồ đạc
- calendar /'kæl ən dər/ (n): lịch
- celebrate /'sel·ə'reɪt/ (v): kỉ niệm
- cool down /kʊl daʊn/(v): làm mát
- Dutch /dʌtʃ/ (n, adj): người /tiếng Hà Lan
- empty out (v): đổ (rác)
- family gathering (n): sum họp gia đình
- feather /'feð·ər/ (n): lông (gia cầm)
- first-footer /'fɜrst'fʊt/ (n): người xông nhà (đầu năm mới)
- get wet (v): bị ướt
- Korean /kə'reɪən/ (n, adj): người/tiếng Hàn Quốc
- remove /rɪ'mu:v/ (v): rửa bỏ

- rooster /'ru.stə/ (n): gà trống
- rubbish /'rʌb.ɪʃ/ (n): rác
- Thai /taɪ/ (n, adj): người ;tiếng Thái Lan
- wish /wɪʃ/ (n, v): lời ước

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

I. SIMPLE FUTURE TENSE

(THÌ TƯƠNG LAI ĐƠN)

1. Cấu trúc của thì tương lai đơn

Khẳng định:

S + will + V (nguyên thể)

Phủ định:

S + will not + V (nguyên thể)

Câu hỏi:

Will + S + V (nguyên thể)

Trả lời:

Yes, S + will./ No, S + won't.

2. Cách sử dụng của thì tương lai đơn

- Diễn tả một quyết định, một ý định nhất thời nảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói.

Ví dụ:

Are you going to the supermarket now? I **will go** with you.

(*Bây giờ bạn đang tới siêu thị à? Tôi sẽ đi với bạn.*)

Ta thấy quyết định đi siêu thị được nảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói khi thấy một người khác cũng đi siêu thị.

I **will come** back home to take my document which I have forgotten.

(*Tôi sẽ về nhà để lấy tài liệu mà tôi để quên.*)

Ta thấy đây cũng là một quyết định tức thời ngay tại thời điểm nói.

- **Diễn tả một dự đoán không có căn cứ.**

Ví dụ:

I think she **will come** to the party.

(*Tôi nghĩ rằng cô ấy sẽ tới bữa tiệc.*)

Ta thấy đây là một dự đoán chủ quan không có căn cứ nên ta sử dụng thì tương lai đơn để diễn đạt.

She supposes that she **will get** a better job.

(Cô ấy tin rằng cô ấy sẽ kiếm được một công việc tốt.)

- **Diễn tả một lời hứa hay lời yêu cầu, đề nghị.**

Ví dụ:

I promise that I **will tell** you the truth.

(Tôi hứa là tôi sẽ nói với bạn sự thật.)

Đây là một lời hứa nên ta sử dụng thì tương lai đơn để diễn đạt.

Will you please **bring** me a cup of coffee?

(Bạn làm ơn mang cho tôi một cốc cà phê được không?)

Đây là một lời đề nghị nên ta cũng sử dụng thì tương lai đơn để diễn đạt.

- **Sử dụng trong câu điều kiện loại một, diễn tả một giả định có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại và tương lai.**

Ví dụ:

If she comes, I **will go** with her.

(Nếu cô ấy đến, tôi sẽ đi với cô ấy.)

Ta thấy việc “cô ấy đến” hoàn toàn có thể xảy ra nên ta sử dụng câu điều kiện loại I để diễn đạt và mệnh đề chính ta sử dụng thì tương lai đơn.

If it stops raining soon, we **will go** to the cinema.

(Nếu trời tạnh mưa sớm thì chúng tôi sẽ đi tới rạp chiếu phim.)

Ta thấy việc “tạnh mưa sớm” hoàn toàn có thể xảy ra nên ta sử dụng câu điều kiện loại I để diễn đạt và mệnh đề chính ta sử dụng thì tương lai

3. Dấu hiệu nhận biết thì tương lai đơn

Trong câu có các trạng từ chỉ thời gian trong tương lai:

- **In + thời gian:** trong ... nữa (in 2 minutes: trong 2 phút nữa)

- **Tomorrow:** ngày mai

- **Next day:** ngày hôm tới

- **Next week/ next month/ next year:** Tuần tới/ tháng tới/ năm tới

Trong câu có những động từ chỉ quan điểm như:

- **Think/ believe/ suppose/ ...:** nghĩ/ tin/ cho là

- **Perhaps:** có lẽ

- **Probably:** có lẽ

II. SHOULD/ SHOULDN'T FOR ADVICE

(ĐƯA RA LỜI KHUYÊN VỚI SHOULD VÀ SHOULDN'T)

1. Cấu trúc

S + should/ shouldn't + V-infinitive

(Should not = shouldn't)

2. Cách dùng

Should có nghĩa là nên và shouldn't có nghĩa là không nên. Đây là cấu trúc thông dụng nhất để đưa ra lời khuyên trong tiếng anh.

a. “Should” dùng để đưa ra lời khuyên.

Ví dụ:

I should do a lot of homework tonight. (*Tôi nên làm nhiều bài tập tối nay.*)

You shouldn't work all day. (*Bạn không nên làm việc cả ngày.*)

b. Chúng ta dùng “I should” hoặc “we should” để đề nghị những điều tốt chúng ta nên làm:

Ví dụ:

I should go home. It's midnight. (*Tôi nên về nhà. Đã nửa đêm rồi.*)

We should invite them to our wedding. (*Chúng ta nên mời họ đến dự đám cưới.*)

c. Chúng ta sử dụng dạng câu hỏi “should I/ we ...?” để xin lời khuyên:

Ví dụ:

What should I say to Fred? (*Tôi nên nói gì với Fred?*)

I need a new passport. Where should I go? (*Tôi cần hộ chiếu mới. Tôi nên đến đâu?*)

d. Chúng ta thường sử dụng "I think" và "I don't think" với "should".

Ví dụ:

I think you should put the answers back. (*Tôi nghĩ rằng bạn nên để bản câu trả lời lại.*)

She doesn't think they should use them. (*Cô ta không nghĩ rằng họ nên sử dụng chúng.*)

C. BÀI TẬP:

①. PHONETICS

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> tudent | B. <u>s</u> ugar | C. <u>s</u> tainless | D. <u>s</u> lang |
| 2. A. <u>s</u> ummer | B. <u>s</u> inger | C. <u>s</u> tudy | D. <u>t</u> ables |
| 3. A. <u>s</u> ure | B. <u>s</u> tupid | C. <u>s</u> pring | D. <u>s</u> nailed |
| 4. A. <u>o</u> cean | B. <u>c</u> eilings | C. <u>c</u> ity | D. <u>c</u> ircle |
| 5. A. <u>a</u> che | B. <u>s</u> chool | C. <u>m</u> achine | D. <u>c</u> hemical |
| 6. A. <u>c</u> over | B. <u>p</u> encil | C. <u>p</u> lace | D. <u>p</u> olice |
| 7. A. <u>s</u> ame | B. <u>s</u> ee | C. <u>s</u> ister | D. <u>s</u> ure |
| 8. A. <u>s</u> tripe | B. <u>s</u> cience | C. <u>u</u> sually | D. <u>s</u> top |
| 9. A. <u>R</u> ussia | B. <u>c</u> lass | C. <u>g</u> lass | D. <u>p</u> ass |
| 10. A. <u>f</u> ix | B. <u>e</u> xam | C. <u>s</u> ix | D. <u>n</u> ext |
| 11. A. <u>d</u> ecorate | B. <u>c</u> alendar | C. <u>c</u> elebrate | D. <u>c</u> lean |
| 12. A. <u>s</u> hopping | B. <u>s</u> ugar | C. <u>s</u> ure | D. <u>s</u> ummer |

13. A. <u>centre</u>	B. <u>special</u>	C. <u>decide</u>	D. <u>rice</u>
14. A. <u>present</u>	B. <u>sound</u>	C. <u>sweet</u>	D. <u>season</u>
15. A. <u>blossom</u>	B. <u>chess</u>	C. <u>messy</u>	D. <u>passion</u>
16. A. <u>should</u>	B. <u>around</u>	C. <u>house</u>	D. <u>sound</u>
17. A. <u>shout</u>	B. <u>flower</u>	C. <u>bow</u>	D. <u>throw</u>
18. A. <u>sure</u>	B. <u>shout</u>	C. <u>sing</u>	D. <u>wish</u>
19. A. <u>peach</u>	B. <u>sweets</u>	C. <u>eat</u>	D. <u>feather</u>
20. A. <u>celebrate</u>	B. <u>cousin</u>	C. <u>city</u>	D. <u>cinema</u>
21. A. <u>historic</u>	B. <u>exciting</u>	C. <u>island</u>	D. <u>firework</u>
22. A. <u>calendar</u>	B. <u>celebrate</u>	C. <u>decorate</u>	D. <u>school</u>
23. A. <u>wonder</u>	B. <u>compass</u>	C. <u>brother</u>	D. <u>forest</u>
24. A. <u>beach</u>	B. <u>teach</u>	C. <u>feather</u>	D. <u>peaceful</u>
25. A. <u>clothes</u>	B. <u>fireworks</u>	C. <u>scissors</u>	D. <u>mountains</u>
26. A. <u>picture</u>	B. <u>question</u>	C. <u>furniture</u>	D. <u>celebration</u>
27. A. <u>bookcase</u>	B. <u>tablet</u>	C. <u>behave</u>	D. <u>game</u>
28. A. <u>thought</u>	B. <u>without</u>	C. <u>theatre</u>	D. <u>tooth</u>
29. A. <u>food</u>	B. <u>good</u>	C. <u>took</u>	D. <u>cooking</u>
30. A. <u>discuss</u>	B. <u>success</u>	C. <u>possess</u>	D. <u>classroom</u>
31. A. <u>special</u>	B. <u>spring</u>	C. <u>she</u>	D. <u>sugar</u>
32. A. <u>cheer</u>	B. <u>child</u>	C. <u>peach</u>	D. <u>chorus</u>
33. A. <u>tradition</u>	B. <u>condition</u>	C. <u>celebration</u>	D. <u>question</u>
34. A. <u>blossom</u>	B. <u>discussion</u>	C. <u>rooster</u>	D. <u>compass</u>
35. A. <u>rice</u>	B. <u>celebrate</u>	C. <u>calendar</u>	D. <u>smile</u>
36. A. <u>decorate</u>	B. <u>market</u>	C. <u>resolution</u>	D. <u>celebrate</u>
37. A. <u>smile</u>	B. <u>so</u>	C. <u>spring</u>	D. <u>noise</u>
38. A. <u>travel</u>	B. <u>parent</u>	C. <u>hand</u>	D. <u>bad</u>
39. A. <u>love</u>	B. <u>pagoda</u>	C. <u>mother</u>	D. <u>come</u>
40. A. <u>lucky</u>	B. <u>shy</u>	C. <u>why</u>	D. <u>buy</u>
41. A. <u>big</u>	B. <u>wish</u>	C. <u>fish</u>	D. <u>high</u>
42. A. <u>pagoda</u>	B. <u>torch</u>	C. <u>overseas</u>	D. <u>sofa</u>
43. A. <u>temple</u>	B. <u>messy</u>	C. <u>decorate</u>	D. <u>department</u>
44. A. <u>museum</u>	B. <u>windsurfing</u>	C. <u>surround</u>	D. <u>diverse</u>
45. A. <u>thrilling</u>	B. <u>then</u>	C. <u>through</u>	D. <u>thread</u>
46. A. <u>tables</u>	B. <u>chopsticks</u>	C. <u>pictures</u>	D. <u>pillows</u>
47. A. <u>cupboards</u>	B. <u>windows</u>	C. <u>tourists</u>	D. <u>posters</u>
48. A. <u>dishes</u>	B. <u>vases</u>	C. <u>plates</u>	D. <u>fridges</u>
49. A. <u>toilets</u>	B. <u>hotels</u>	C. <u>laptops</u>	D. <u>fireworks</u>
50. A. <u>televisions</u>	B. <u>bookshelves</u>	C. <u>wardrobes</u>	D. <u>parents</u>

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. active | B. crazy | C. remote | D. crowded |
| 2. A. repeat | B. rubbish | C. money | D. feather |
| 3. A. forest | B. lucky | C. empty | D. deny |
| 4. A. apricot | B. first-footer | C. calendar | D. decorate |
| 5. A. pagoda | B. fantastic | C. cathedral | D. family |
| 6. A. sofa | B. cupboard | C. delay | D. compass |
| 7. A. define | B. wardrobe | C. boring | D. crowded |
| 8. A. desert | B. delete | C. station | D. modern |
| 9. A. celebrate | B. creative | C. remember | D. apartment |
| 10. A. generous | B. gallery | C. celebrate | D. pagoda |
| 11. A. flower | B. travel | C. lucky | D. behave |
| 12. A. firework | B. believe | C. money | D. Pretty |
| 13. A. decorate | B. celebrate | C. example | D. furniture |
| 14. A. activity | B. envelope | C. colourful | D. poverty |
| 15. A. pagoda | B. February | C. calendar | D. relative |

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- On New Year's Day, children in Korea make a _____ to their parents or elders and wish them a long and healthy _____.
A. bow - live B. friend - lives C. bows - lives D. bow - life
- I wish you a _____ life and _____ health.
A. long - best B. big - good C. long - good D. happy - bad
- We should help our mothers _____ the table after the meal.
A. make B. to make C. clear D. to clearing
- I will _____ my lucky money in my piggy bank.
A. keep B. spend C. borrow D. give
- At Tet, many people present rice to wish _____ enough food throughout the year.
A. in B. at C. for D. with
- We shouldn't play music _____ after midnight.
A. careful B. right C. loud D. easy
- Some Vietnamese people don't eat shrimps _____ New Year's Day.
A. in B. on C. at D. during
- The Times Square Ball begins its fall _____ millions of voices countdown the final seconds of the year.
A. when B. during C. throughout D. because
- Children should help their parents _____ their house _____ flowers and pictures.

- A. Will B. Do C. Are D. does
27. She will have a party ._____ her birthday.
A. for B. on C. in D. to
28. What's your _____?
A. birthday B. day of birth C. date of birth D. birth of day
29. Will he be free? - ._____
A. No, he won't B. No, he doesn't
C. No, he isn't D. No, he will
30. We will _____ our old friends next Sunday.
A. to meet B. meet C. meeting D. meets
31. _____ you like a cup of tea?
A. Would B. Will C. What D. does
32. He looks different _____ his father.
A. at B. with C. from D. to
33. Students have two _____ each day.
A. 20 - minutes breaks C. 20 - minute breaks
B. 20 - minute break D. 20 minutes break
34. The United States' Library of Congress is one of the ._____ libraries in the world.
A. larger B. largest C. larger than D. large
35. _____ novels are very interesting.
A. These B. This C. That D. It
36. Vietnamese people usually return to their families _____ Tet.
A. in B. on C. for D. during
37. When the clock strikes midnight, colorful fireworks light _____ the sky.
A. in B. up C. on D. over
38. You shouldn't _____ things on the first day of Tet.
A. make B. hang C. break D. cook
39. Tet is the _____ time of the year.
A. busy B. busier C. busiest D. most busy
40. Tet is the biggest and most important _____ in Vietnam.
A. festival B. decoration C. occasion D. tradition
41. Tet is coming. We _____ clean and decorate our house.
A. should B. shouldn't C. mustn't D. are
42. I always _____ my grandparents a long life and good health.
A. celebrate B. wish C. make D. bring
43. The _____ is the first person to enter your house in the New Year.
A. relative B. first cousin C. first footer D. rooster

44. ‘_____ do Vietnamese people prepare for Tet?’ ‘They decorate their houses and cook special food.’
 A. What B. Where C. How D. How often
45. ‘In which country do people throw water at one another?’ ‘_____’
 A. Scotland B. Thailand C. The USA D. Denmark
46. Giving red envelopes containing lucky money to children is wishing_____good health.
 A. to B. for C. from D. away
47. We will_____ red fruits and rice on the altar to wish a happy year during Tet.
 A. cheer B. pray C. welcome D. present
48. Some people often decorate their houses with red flowers and balloons because they believe that this colour will bring_____ to them during the year.
 A. poverty B. richness C. luck D. gold
49. Some people avoid eating_____ at Tet because they think it won't bring success to them.
 A. pot B. green beans C. eggs D. shrimps
50. My mother and I to the flower market to buy a kumquat tree and some apricot flowers because Tet is coming soon.
 A. are going B. will go C. went D. go

3. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. I always go to the pagoda and visit my _____during Tet (RELATION) holiday.
2. Tet is a special occasion for family_____. Every family (GATHER) member enjoys themselves together during that time.
3. We made a lot of *Banh Chung* and cleaned the house to (CELEBRATION) _____ Tet.
- 4._____, children will receive lucky money from adults (TRADITION) during Tet holiday.
5. During Tet, we go to the pagoda to pray for good (HAPPY) health,_____ and wealth.
6. We shouldn't eat a lot of sweets because we can have a (TOOTH) _____ or astomach ache during Tet.
7. It's so_____ to have a spring vacation in Sa Pa. (FANTASY)
8. There are lots of interesting _when you visit Hoi An Ancient (ACT)

9. They want their local environment to maintain _____without (NATURE)
people's bad actions.

11. My father will spend an amount of time_____our walls before Tet. **(REPAINT)**

13. When they went camping in the forest, they brought_____bags to avoid dangerous insects. **(SLEEP)**

15. Hue is one of the tourist_____in Viet Nam. I'd like to visit (ATTRACT)
the Perfume River and many ancient tombs there.

17. You must be _____ when you cross the busy streets. **(CARE)**

19. Do you know what the _____ of the river ? . **(DEEP)**

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text.

The main traditions include eating (3.UNION)_____dinner with family, giving red envelopes, firecrackers, new clothes, and (4.DECORATE)_____. For full details see Spring Festival (5. CELEBRATE)_____or read on for a summary of (6. ACT)_____and guide to travel in China in this festive period.

I. Choose the underlined word or phrase (marked A, B, C or D) in each sentence that needs correcting.

114

A B C D

18. If you climb the mountain, you will sees a lot of flowers

A B C D

19. There are five bridge across Han River in Da Nang.

A B C D

20. They are on holiday for two weeks so they will be here tomorrow.

A B C D

II. Each sentence has a mistake. Find and correct it.

Sentence	Correction
1. One of my brothers have two eggs and some bread for breakfast.	_____
2. Our teacher gives us much homework today.	_____
3. My family is traveling to Ho ChiMinh City by a bus.	_____
4. Most people doesn't go to work on Sunday.	_____
5. Our classroom is on the two floor.	_____
6. His sister often goes to school with an orange small ba	_____
7. Mai always helps her mother in the housework.	_____
8. Would you like an apples or any orange juice?	_____
9. A lot of my friends play soccer, but not much of them play tennis	_____
10. Vy is a very good tennis play. She plays for the school team	_____

5. READING

I. Read the passage and decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

New Year's Eve, 31st December, is a time for the British to eat, drink and party when they celebrate the beginning of a New Year. Many people go to Trafalgar Square in London or a street party in their city. Others visit friends or go to pubs and restaurants, which are very crowded on that night.

There is a great atmosphere when everyone waits for Big Ben to strike midnight. Then people kiss and hold hands to sing the traditional Scottish song *Auld Lang Syne*. Many people also light fireworks at midnight.

The main tradition is 'First Footing'. This means the first person to come into your house after midnight should be a tall dark-haired man. He should bring a piece of coal, some bread, salt or a bottle of whisky to bring good luck to the family.

A lot of people also make New Year's Resolution; they promise to do things like stop smoking or 'do more exercise' in the New Year. January 1st (and 2nd in Scotland) is a public holiday so their people can recover from their celebrations.

1. On New Year's Eve everyone stays at home.
2. People sing a traditional song at midnight.
3. There are no fireworks on New Year's Eve.
4. It is good luck for a blonde woman to be your first visitor after midnight.
5. Lots of people promise to change in the New Year.
6. New Year's Day is a public holiday in Britain.

II. Read and choose the correct answers.

Preparation for Tet, Vietnamese New Year, starts two or three months before the actual celebrations. People try to pay off their debts in advance so that they can be debt-free on Tet. Parents buy new clothes for their children so that the children can wear them when Tet arrives. Because a lot of commercial activities will cease during the celebrations people try to stock up on supplies as much as possible.

In the days leading up to Tet, the streets and market are full of people. Everyone is busy buying food, clothes, and decorating for their house. Each family prepares some special foods for the holiday. Those who live far away from home will try to come home to celebrate Tet with their family. Vietnamese families usually have a family altar to pay respect to their ancestors. During Tet the altar is thoroughly cleaned and new offerings are placed there.

On New Year's Eve, each home is thoroughly cleaned and decorated with flowers and offerings for ancestors by the night before Tet. Many people stay up until midnight to welcome the New Year or go to the pagoda to pray for luck, prosperity, and happiness.

In the morning, actual Tet celebrations begin. The first day of Tet is reserved for the nuclear family. In big cities, the streets are usually empty as most people stay at home or leave the city to visit their close relatives in the countryside. Usually, children dress their new clothes and give their elders the traditional Tet greetings before receiving the lucky money.

- This passage is about _____.
A. New Year's Eve
B. the first day of the New Year
C. preparation for Tet and Tet holiday
D. paying debt before Tet
- Vietnamese children _____.
A. have to pay off debt before Tet
B. should not receive any money during Tet
C. must not pay off debt before Tet
D. must not receive any money during Tet

- C. are not allowed to wear new clothes at Tet
- D. receive lucky money from adults during Tet

3. Which is NOT mentioned as a preparation for Tet?

- A. visiting friends and relatives
- B. cooking special foods
- C. decorating houses
- D. paying off debts

4. Which is NOT referred during Tet celebration?

- A. going to the pagoda
- B. the increasing of commercial activities
- C. visiting relatives
- D. wearing new clothes

5. Vietnamese families _____.

- A. do not celebrate Tet if they are poor
- B. only celebrate Tet when they are wealthy
- C. have an altar to worship their ancestors
- D. gather in the streets on the first

day of Tet

III. Read the following text and answer the questions below

ACTIVITIES OF SEOLLAL

There will be special operations for the visitors who want to make special memories at Hangang River during the holiday. After watching a romantic acoustic guitar performance on board, they can fly kites and experience the “Winter Story Cruise” that deserves to be enjoyed.

When visiting Hangang Park during the Korean new Year’s holiday, anyone can enjoy the traditional experiences and games for free. In the 11 areas Hangang Park, visitors can enjoy various traditional games including Yutnori, Neolttwigi, etc.

From January 27th to January 30th , “the 2017 Seollal Feast at Unhyeongung Palace” will be held in the Unhyeongung Palace, aiming to greet New Year’s day, Seollal which, is one of the most special holidays for Korean people, and to pray for the well-being of all the citizens throughout the year.

1. What can people do after watching a guitar performance on board?

.....

2. What can people enjoy when visiting Hangang Park during the Korean New year’s holiday?

.....

3. Where can visitors enjoy various traditional games?

.....

4. What traditional games are available in the 11 areas of Hangang Park?

.....

5. What is the purpose of celebrating 2017 Seollal Feast?

.....

7. WRITING

I. Use “*should + verb*” to make the sentences.

Ex: I have a stomachache. (go to the doctor)

→ *You should go to the doctor.*

1. I feel very tired. (take a short rest)

~~✍~~

2. Hoa has a bad cold. (stay in bed)

~~✍~~

3. Minh's room is very dirty, (clean it every day)

~~✍~~

4. We'll have an English test tomorrow. (learn your lessons carefully)

~~✍~~

5. Nga has a headache. (take an aspirin)

~~✍~~

6. My teeth aren't strong and white. (brush them regularly)

~~✍~~

II. Make questions with the underlined words.

1. Our school year starts on September 5th.

~~✍~~

2. Summer vacation lasts for three months.

~~✍~~

3. The longest vacation is summer vacation.

~~✍~~

4. I usually visit my grandparents during my vacation.

~~✍~~

5. My mother works eight hours a day.

~~✍~~

6. Mr. Robinson is an English teacher.

~~✍~~

III. Give advice with "should" or "shouldn't", using the words given in brackets.

Example: You look very pale and terrible. (see a doctor)

You should see a doctor.

1. You work until 11 every night. (not work so hard)

~~✍~~

2. It's Mai's birthday on Saturday. I think we should do something. (buy her a nice birthday present)

~~✍~~

3. The car did not start this morning. (take it to the garage)

~~✍~~

4. Our train leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning. (go to bed early tonight)

~~✍~~

5.He always gives you the wrong advice. (not listen to him)




6.Everything will be all right. (not worry so much)



7.He doesn't like this job because it's so boring. (look for another one)




8.It's so late to play music so loudly, we'll wake up the neighbours. (turn it off)



9.Your hair is so long. (have a haircut)



10.He doesn't understand the lesson. (meet the teacher after class)



IV. You the following set of words and phrases to write complete sentences.


1. People/ decorate/ homes/ plants/ flowers.



2. .People/ try/nice/ polite/ each other/ because/ they/ want/good luck/ New Year's Day.



3.They/ visit/ relatives/ friends/ they/ exchange/ New Year's wishes.



4 .Many people/ go/ pagoda/ have/ happy year/ their family.



5.Tet/ a time/ fun/ festivals/ throughout/ country.



=====

ANSWER KEYS

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

1. B	11.D	21.A	31.B	41.D
2. D	12.D	22.B	32.D	42.B
3. A	13.B	23.D	33.D	43.D
4. A	14.A	24.C	34.B	44.A
5. C	15.D	25.B	35.C	45.B
6. A	16.A	26.B	36.B	46.B
7. D	17.C	27.B	37.D	47.C
8. C	18.C	28.B	38.B	48.C
9. A	19.D	29.A	39.B	49.B
10. B	20.B	30.C	40.A	50.D

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.C	4.B	7.A	10.D	13.C
2.A	5.D	8.B	11.D	14.A
3.D	6.C	9.A	12.B	15.A

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences

1.D	11.C	21.D	31.A	41.A
2.C	12.A	22.A	32.C	42.B
3.C	13.B	23.C	33.B	43.C
4.A	14.B	24.C	34.B	44.C

5.C	15.B	25.B	35.A	45.B
6.C	16.D	26.A	36.D	46.B
7.B	17.C	27.A	37.B	47.D
8.A	18.A	28.C	38.C	48.C
9.D	19.A	29.A	39.C	49.D
10.A	20.B	30.B	40.A	50.B

③. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. relatives	6. toothache	11. repainting	16. Interestingly
2. gatherings	7. fantastic	12. mountainous	17. careful
3. celebrate	8. activities	13. sleeping	18. oldest
4. Traditionally	9. naturally	14. unforgettable	19. depth
5. happiness	10. decorations	15. attractions	20. leaves

II. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following text.

1. greatly	2. sticky	3. reunion
5. decorations	6. celebrations	7. activities

④. VERB FORM

I. Using “should” or “shouldn’t” to make the correct sentences.

1. You shouldn’t park	2. should I cook	3. You should wear
4. You shouldn’t smoke	5. We should arrive	6. Should I send
7. I should apply	8. I should write	9. I shouldn’t eat
10. We should complaint		

II. Give the correct form of the verbs in the simple future.

1. Will they come	2. will you get	3. will you do
4. is she	5. does the sunset	6. she will get the job
7. Is David	8. will the weather be	9. do you see
10. does he get		

III. Choose the correct modal to complete each sentence.

1. Shall	2. must	3. Would	4. can	5. must
6. shouldn’t	7. should	8. mustn’t	9. should	10. must

IV. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. celebrate	2. won't buy	3. is repainting	4 wear
5. cleaning	6. occurs	7. Will they give	8. eating

5. CORRECTION

I. Choose the underlined word or phrase (marked A, B, C or D) in each sentence that needs correcting.

1.A	6.D	11.A	16.B
2.A	7.A	12.D	17.D
3.B	8.A	13.A	18.C
4.B	9.C	14.B	19.B
5.C	10.C	15.B	20.D

II. Each sentence has a mistake. Find and correct it.

1. have → has	6. an orange small → a small orange
2. homeworks → homework	7. in → with
3. a bus → bus	8. any → some
4. doesn't → don't	9. much → many
5. two → second	10. play → player

6. READING

I. Read the passage and decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. F	2.T	3.F
4. F	5.T	6.T

II. Read and choose the correct answers.

1.C	2.D	3.A	4.B	5.C
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

III. Read the following text and answer the questions below.

1. They can fly kites and experience the “Winter Story Cruise”
2. Anyone can enjoy the traditional experiences and games for free.
3. They can enjoy various traditional games in the 11 areas of Hangang Park.
4. They are Yutnori, Neolttwigi, etc.
5. It's aiming to greet New Year's day, Seollal which, is one of the most special holidays for Korean people.

7. WRITING

I. Use “*should + verb*” to make the sentences.

1. You should take a short rest.
2. She should stay in bed.
3. He should clean it every day.

4. You should learn your lessons carefully.
5. She should take an aspirin.
6. You should brush them regularly.

II. Make questions with the underlined words.

1. When does your school year start?
2. How long does summer vacation last?
3. Which vacation is the longest?
4. What do you usually do during your vacation?
5. How many hours does your mother work a day?
6. What does Mr. Robinson do?

III. Give advice with “should” or “shouldn’t”, using the words given in brackets.

1. You shouldn’t work so hard.
2. We should buy her a nice birthday present.
3. You should take it to the garage.
4. You should go to bed early tonight
5. You shouldn’t listen to him.
6. You shouldn’t worry so much.
7. He should look for another one.
8. We should turn it off.
9. You should have a haircut.
10. He should meet the teacher after class.

IV. You the following set of words and phrases to write complete sentences.

1. People decorate their home with plants and flowers.
2. People try to be nice to each other because they want good luck on New Year’s Day.
3. They visit their relatives, and they exchange New Year’s wishes.
4. Many people go to the pagoda in order to have a happy year for their family.
5. Tet is a time for fun and festivals throughout the country.

HỌC KỲ 2

UNIT 7: TELEVISION

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- cartoon /kɑː'tun/ (n): phim hoạt hình
- game show /'geɪm ʃoʊ/ (n): chương trình trò chơi, buổi truyền hình giải trí
- film /fɪlm/ (n): phim truyện
- comedy /'kɒdɪ.mə.di/ (n): hài kịch, phim hài
- newsreader /'njuːz.rɪː.dər/ (n): người đọc bản tin trên đài, truyền hình
- weatherman /'weð.ər.mæn/ (n): người thông báo tin thời tiết trên đài, ti vi
- adventure /əd'ven.tʃər/ (n) cuộc phiêu lưu
- announce /ə'naʊns/ (v): thông báo
- audience /'ɔː.di.əns/ (n): khán giả
- character /'kær.ək.tər/ (n): nhân vật
- clumsy /'klʌm.zi/ (adj): vụng về
- cool /kuːl/ (adj): dễ thương
- cute /kjuːt/ (adj): xinh xắn
- documentary /ˌdɒk.jə'men.tə.ri/ (n): phim tài liệu
- educate /'edʒ.ə.keɪt/ (v): giáo dục
- educational /ˌedʒ.ə'keɪ.ʃən.əl/ (adj): mang tính giáo dục
- entertain /ˌen.tər'teɪn/ (v): giải trí
- event /ɪ'vent/ (n): sự kiện
- fact /fækt/ (n): thực tế, sự thật hiển nhiên
- fair /feər/ (n): hội chợ, chợ phiên
- funny /'fʌn i/ (adj): hài hước
- human /'hju.mən/ (adj): thuộc về con người
- local /'ləʊ.kəl/ (adj): mang tính địa phương
- main /meɪn/ (adj): chính yếu, chủ đạo

- manner /'mæn ə/ (n): tác phong, phong cách
- MC viết tắt của từ Master of Ceremony /'mæs tər ʌv 'ser-ə,moʊ-ni/ (n): người dẫn chương trình
- musical /'mju-zɪ-kəl/ (n): buổi biểu diễn văn nghệ, vở nhạc kịch
- national /'næʃ-ə-nəl/ (adj): thuộc về quốc gia
- pig racing /pɪg 'reɪ-sɪŋ/ (n): đua lợn
- programme /'proʊ.græm/ (n): chương trình
- reason /'ri zən/ (n): nguyên nhân
- remote control /rɪ'moʊt kən'troʊl/ (n): điều khiển (ti vi) từ xa
- reporter /rɪ'pɔr-tər/ (n): phóng viên
- schedule /'skedʒ.u:l/ (n): chương trình, lịch trình
- series /'siəri-z/ (n): phim dài kỳ trên truyền hình
- stupid /'stu-pɪd/ (adj): đần độn, ngớ ngẩn
- universe /'ju-nə,vɜrs/ (n): vũ trụ
- viewer /'vju-ər/ (n): người xem (ti vi)

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

I. QUESTION WORDS (CÁC TỪ ĐỂ HỎI)

1. Câu hỏi "WH":

Là câu hỏi khi trả lời ta không thể trả lời có hoặc không, hoặc cái này hoặc cái kia như câu trả lời yes/no mà phải trả lời đúng theo yêu cầu của từ để hỏi.

2. Ý nghĩa của các từ để hỏi

- **Who** (ai) dùng để hỏi về người

Ví dụ:

Who is the MC of this TV programme? (Ai là người dẫn chương trình truyền hình này?)

- **What** (cái gì) dùng để hỏi về sự vật, sự việc

Ví dụ:

What is your favourite programme ? (Chương trình nào bạn thích?)

- **When** (khi nào) dùng để hỏi về thời gian

Ví dụ:

When does the film start? (*Khi nào bộ phim bắt đầu?*)

- **Where** (*ở đâu*) dùng để hỏi về địa điểm, nơi chốn

Ví dụ:

Where is my book? (*Quyển sách của tớ đâu?*)

- **Why** (*tại sao*) dùng để hỏi về nguyên nhân và mục đích.

Ví dụ:

Why do you like Tao Quan programme? (*Tại sao bạn thích chương trình Táo Quân?*)

- **How** (*như thế nào, bằng cách nào*) dùng để hỏi về cách thức, điều kiện và chất lượng.

Ví dụ:

How is the game show? (*Trò chơi này thế nào?*)

*Trong đó từ để hỏi “how” có thể kết hợp với 1 tính từ để tạo thành các câu hỏi như:

- **How long** (*dài bao nhiêu, bao lâu*) dùng để hỏi về độ dài của sự vật, hoặc khoảng thời gian.

Ví dụ:

How long does this film last? (*Bộ phim này kéo dài bao lâu?*)

- **How much/ many** (*bao nhiêu*) dùng để hỏi về số lượng.

Ví dụ:

How many hours a day do you watch television? (*Một ngày bạn xem ti vi bao nhiêu tiếng?*)

- **How often** (*bao nhiêu lâu làm 1 lần, có thường xuyên không*) dùng để hỏi về số lần lặp lại hay xuyên của một mức độ thường hành động hay sự việc.

Ví dụ:

How often do you watch the documentary? (*Bạn có thường xuyên xem phim tài liệu không?*)

3. Cấu trúc câu sử dụng từ để hỏi

a. Từ để hỏi đóng vai trò là chủ ngữ.

Cấu trúc: **Wh- + V + ...?**

A: Who holds this event? (*Ai là người tổ chức sự kiện này vậy?*)

B: Mr. Tom holds this event. (*Ngài Tom tổ chức sự kiện này.*)

b. Từ để hỏi không đóng vai trò là chủ ngữ

Cấu trúc: **Wh- + auxiliary verb + S + V+...?**

A: When do you go to the movie theatre? (*Khi nào bạn đến rạp chiếu phim?*)

B: I go to the movie theatre at about 8 pm. (*Tớ đi tới rạp chiếu phim khoảng 8 giờ tối.*)

II. CONJUNCTIONS (LIÊN TỪ)

1. Định nghĩa liên từ

Liên từ (hay còn gọi là từ nối) dùng để kết hợp các từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề hoặc câu với

nhau.

Liên từ đóng vai trò quan trọng trong tiếng Anh, đặc biệt là ngôn ngữ viết. Bởi chúng làm cho các ý trong một câu, các câu văn trong một đoạn liên kết với nhau chặt chẽ hơn.

Có hai dạng liên từ cơ bản là:

Liên từ đẳng lập và Liên từ phụ thuộc

2. Liên từ đẳng lập.

And (và): Dùng để bổ sung thêm thông tin trong câu hoặc cho mệnh đề đứng trước nó.

Ví dụ: I like seeing the cartoon **and** the news when I have free time.

(Tôi thích xem phim hoạt hình và thời sự khi tôi có thời gian rảnh rỗi.)

But (nhưng): Dùng để nối 2 mệnh đề mang nghĩa trái ngược, đối lập nhau.

Ví dụ: My brother likes watching cartoons **but** I like watching game shows.

(Anh trai tôi thích xem phim hoạt hình nhưng tôi lại thích xem các chương trình giải trí.)

Or (hoặc): Được dùng khi có sự lựa chọn.

Ví dụ: You can watch Korean film **or** listen to music.

(Bạn có thể xem phim Hàn hoặc nghe nhạc.)

So (nên, vì vậy mà, vì thế nên, vậy nên): Dùng để nói về một kết quả của sự việc được nhắc đến trước đó.

Ví dụ: He often watches news programmes, **so** he gets a lot of information about society.

(Anh ấy thường xem các chương trình thời sự nên anh ấy cập nhật được nhiều thông tin về xã hội.)

III. Liên từ phụ thuộc

Because (vì, bởi vì): Dùng để nói về lí do của một sự việc được nhắc tới trước hoặc sau nó.

Ví dụ: I like this film **because** it is very meaningful. *(Tôi thích bộ phim này bởi vì nó rất ý nghĩa.)*

Although/ though (mặc dù, cho dù, tuy rằng): Dùng để nối 2 mệnh đề mà mệnh đề chính mang kết quả tương phản với mệnh đề phụ,.

Ví dụ: Although he had a good performance, he didn't win the contest.

(Mặc dù anh ấy đã có phần trình diễn tốt nhưng anh ấy đã không giành chiến thắng trong cuộc thi này.)

I want to be a newsreader though some people said that it was a boring job.

(Tôi mong muốn trở thành một phát thanh viên cho dù một vài người nói rằng đó là một công việc nhàm chán.)

C. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG:

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.

1. A. <u>bed</u>	B. <u>setting</u>	C. <u>decide</u>	D. <u>get</u>
2. A. <u>easy</u>	B. <u>eat</u>	C. <u>learn</u>	D. <u>tea</u>
3. A. <u>sit</u>	B. <u>in</u>	C. <u>if</u>	D. <u>fine</u>
4. A. <u>child</u>	B. <u>watch</u>	C. <u>chin</u>	D. <u>school</u>
5. A. <u>come</u>	B. <u>no</u>	C. <u>open</u>	D. <u>home</u>
6. A. <u>theater</u>	B. <u>there</u>	C. <u>through</u>	D. <u>three</u>
7. A. <u>brother</u>	B. <u>breath</u>	C. <u>either</u>	D. <u>clothes</u>
8. A. <u>clip</u>	B. <u>give</u>	C. <u>twice</u>	D. <u>stupid</u>
9. A. <u>favorite</u>	B. <u>animal</u>	C. <u>channel</u>	D. <u>programme</u>
10. A. <u>studio</u>	B. <u>documentary</u>	C. <u>cute</u>	D. <u>industry</u>
11. A. <u>when</u>	B. <u>where</u>	C. <u>best</u>	D. <u>detective</u>
12. A. <u>weather</u>	B. <u>newsreader</u>	C. <u>teaching</u>	D. <u>repeat</u>
13. A. <u>clumsy</u>	B. <u>cute</u>	C. <u>but</u>	D. <u>just</u>
14. A. <u>earth</u>	B. <u>thanks</u>	C. <u>feather</u>	D. <u>theater</u>
15. A. <u>the</u>	B. <u>think</u>	C. <u>with</u>	D. <u>they</u>
16. A. <u>something</u>	B. <u>theatre</u>	C. <u>neither</u>	D. <u>monthly</u>
17. A. <u>other</u>	B. <u>thinking</u>	C. <u>healthy</u>	D. <u>birthday</u>
18. A. <u>Thailand</u>	B. <u>weatherman</u>	C. <u>anything</u>	D. <u>Thanksgiving</u>
19. A. <u>earth</u>	B. <u>through</u>	C. <u>both</u>	D. <u>there</u>
20. A. <u>growth</u>	B. <u>three</u>	C. <u>feather</u>	D. <u>thing</u>
21. A. <u>this</u>	B. <u>think</u>	C. <u>thank</u>	D. <u>thieves</u>
22. A. <u>gather</u>	B. <u>bathe</u>	C. <u>birthday</u>	D. <u>weather</u>
23. A. <u>tooth</u>	B. <u>breathe</u>	C. <u>through</u>	D. <u>earth</u>
24. A. <u>thirty</u>	B. <u>than</u>	C. <u>therefore</u>	D. <u>those</u>
25. A. <u>mouth</u>	B. <u>Thursday</u>	C. <u>nothing</u>	D. <u>worthy</u>
26. A. <u>both</u>	B. <u>teeth</u>	C. <u>smooth</u>	D. <u>fourth</u>
27. A. <u>weather</u>	B. <u>wealthy</u>	C. <u>clothing</u>	D. <u>bathing</u>
28. A. <u>though</u>	B. <u>thank</u>	C. <u>throw</u>	D. <u>thin</u>
29. A. <u>southern</u>	B. <u>neither</u>	C. <u>thus</u>	D. <u>third</u>
30. A. <u>author</u>	B. <u>those</u>	C. <u>width</u>	D. <u>think</u>
31. A. <u>thin</u>	B. <u>than</u>	C. <u>they</u>	D. <u>there</u>
32. A. <u>birthday</u>	B. <u>earth</u>	C. <u>worth</u>	D. <u>there</u>
33. A. <u>another</u>	B. <u>death</u>	C. <u>brother</u>	D. <u>though</u>
34. A. <u>thank</u>	B. <u>mother</u>	C. <u>thunder</u>	D. <u>throat</u>
35. A. <u>they</u>	B. <u>three</u>	C. <u>thirst</u>	D. <u>thread</u>
36. A. <u>worth</u>	B. <u>thick</u>	C. <u>though</u>	D. <u>wrath</u>
37. A. <u>Thursday</u>	B. <u>than</u>	C. <u>there</u>	D. <u>those</u>
38. A. <u>Thursday</u>	B. <u>thanks</u>	C. <u>these</u>	D. <u>birthday</u>
39. A. <u>thought</u>	B. <u>without</u>	C. <u>theater</u>	D. <u>tooth</u>

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 40. A. <u>weather</u> | B. <u>wealthy</u> | C. <u>clothing</u> | D. <u>bathing</u> |
| 41. A. <u>thirsty</u> | B. <u>both</u> | C. <u>Thanksgiving</u> | D. <u>there</u> |
| 42. A. <u>weather</u> | B. <u>through</u> | C. <u>warmth</u> | D. <u>tooth</u> |
| 43. A. <u>than</u> | B. <u>their</u> | C. <u>earth</u> | D. <u>then</u> |
| 44. A. <u>birthday</u> | B. <u>although</u> | C. <u>thing</u> | D. <u>theatre</u> |
| 45. A. <u>anything</u> | B. <u>neither</u> | C. <u>than</u> | D. <u>feather</u> |
| 46. A. <u>think</u> | B. <u>thought</u> | C. <u>theatre</u> | D. <u>there</u> |
| 47. A. <u>mother</u> | B. <u>through</u> | C. <u>leather</u> | D. <u>either</u> |
| 48. A. <u>them</u> | B. <u>they</u> | C. <u>something</u> | D. <u>this</u> |
| 49. A. <u>thirty</u> | B. <u>though</u> | C. <u>fifth</u> | D. <u>thanks</u> |
| 50. A. <u>everything</u> | B. <u>brother</u> | C. <u>theory</u> | D. <u>both</u> |

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. channel | B. programme | C. distance | D. control |
| 2. A. animal | B. radio | C. specific | D. character |
| 3. A. human | B. colour | C. picture | D. event |
| 4. A. comedy | B. detective | C. teenager | D. popular |
| 5. A. series | B. country | C. cartoon | D. nation |
| 6. A. watching | B. statement | C. habit | D. surprise |
| 7. A. garden | B. summer | C. support | D. planet |
| 8. A. description | B. favourite | C. discover | D. instructor |
| 9. A. activity | B. information | C. documentary | D. education |
| 10. A. jungle | B. stranger | C. culture | D. success |
| 11. A. cartoon | B. funny | C. little | D. channel |
| 12. A. education | B. entertaining | C. comedian | D. exhibition |
| 13. A. Jupiter | B. universe | C. stadium | D. Pacific |
| 14. A. squirrel | B. giraffe | C. ocean | D. garden |
| 15. A. newspaper | B. designer | C. reporter | D. adventure |

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- VTV2 and VTV3 are well-known_____ channels in Viet Nam.
A. foreign B. national C. local D. international
- He is one of the most famous_____ in Viet Nam. You can see him appear on weather forecast every day.
A. MCs B. comedians C. newsreaders D. weathermen
- I need a___immediately because I can't turn on your TV without it when I sit on the sofa.
A. TV screen B. TV viewer C. remote control D. volume button

4. My father likes watching_____ programmes. They have a lot of football matches or boxing competitions.
 A. sports B. animals C. news D. films
5. The main character in this comedy show looks so_____. His motions and actions always make me laugh a lot.
 A. boring B. clumsy C. skilful D. intelligent
6. I watch **The Adventures of Tin Tin** on TV___ every Saturday. It's a about a smart boy and his loyal small dog.
 A. documentary B. cartoon series C. broadcast D. weather forecast
7. I like watching science channels because I can a lot of interesting things about my life.
 A. discover B. test C. instruct D. compete
8. It's difficult for me to decide to watch between two programmes. They're ____ different channels ____the same time.
 A. on/ in B. from/ at C. on/ at D. from/ in
9. I can't watch my favourite game show ____my father is watching news at present.
 A. although B. so C. and D. because
10. He likes watching animals programmes, ____ he also likes watching comedy shows.
 A. and B. so C. but D. or
11. The TV schedule today is so boring, I decide to go out with my friends.
 A, although B. so C. because D. but
12. ____ he's a famous actor, he seems to be very friendly with his fans.
 A. Although B. So C. Because D. And
13. is dancing in your room? - It's my sister.
 A. Why B. How C. What D. Who
14. ____ is this documentary on? - About half an hour.
 A. How far B. How much C. How long D. How often
15. _____ of music do you like? - I like Pop and Rock.
 A. How many kind B. How kind
 C. What kind D. What much kind
16. 'Why are you laughing so hard?' 'I am watching a _____. It's really funny!'
 A. drama B. news C. comedy D. romance
17. Did you watch the _____ about the history of India?
 A. documentary B. sitcom C. news D. game
18. *Who wants To Be a Millionaire* is a kind of _____.
 A. music programmes B. game shows C. talk shows D. reality shows
19. I love _____. Tom and Jerry are my favourite characters.
 A. romances B. comedies C. documentaries D. cartoons
20. Grandma watches her favourite _____ every day. She never misses any episodes.

- A. cartoon B. series C. news D. weather forecast
21. Where is the _____? I'd like to change the channel.
A. remote control B. volume button C. TV programme D. schedule
22. Could you turn up the _____ please. I can't hear that singer very well.
A. channel B. programme C. volume D. television
23. Let's take a look at the weather _____ now!
A. forecast B. presentation C. broadcast D. programme
24. Did you see the Prime Minister on the 10 o'clock _____ last night?
A. drama B. sitcom C. news D. cartoon
25. Jill Newman was a(n) _____ on News at Ten.
A. MC B. newsreader C. host D. interviewer
26. _____ are you going to invite to your party next week?
A. What B. Who C. Whose D. Where
27. _____ did you spend in Hanoi? – One week.
A. How many B. How much C. How long D. How often
28. _____ is a person who reads a report in the program.
A. A weatherman B. A comedian C. A newsreader D. A guest
29. We use a _____ to change the channels from a distance.
A. remote control B. TV schedule
C. newspaper D. volume button
30. I want to watch the cartoon _____ I turn on the TV.
A. but B. so C. although D. because
31. Jerry is a(n) _____ clever little mouse.
A. small B. special C. intelligent D. special
32. 'Let's learn' teaches children to study Maths. It's an _____ program.
A. live B. popular C. entertaining D. educational
33. _____ Mai and Lan are interested in listening to music.
A. Because B. Both C. Neither D. So
34. The book is _____ the adventure of three close friends.
A. on B. from C. at D. about
35. They invite special _____ to appear in the show.
A. character B. guests C. foxes D. audiences
36. Millions of children _____ the world enjoy the show.
A. all B. in C. around D. over
37. The game show this week will test your general _____ about Amazon jungle.
A. schedule B. knowledge C. fact D. adventure
38. The program can both _____ and entertain young audiences.
A. educated B. education C. educational D. educate
39. The _____ I like best is Xuan Bac.

- A. comedy B. comedian C. fun D. funny
40. Where are the children? They _____ in the yard.
A. play B. are playing C. is playing D. plays
41. Disney Channel is one of the most _____ channels _____ children .
A. good - for B. exciting - of C. popular - to D. popular - for
42. My family enjoys watching game shows _____ they are very exciting and interesting.
A. because B. so C. but D. and
43. VTV is a _____ television channel in Viet Nam, and it attracts millions of TV viewers in Viet Nam.
A. wide B. local C. international D. national
44. "What is your _____ . TV programme?" - "It's cartoons"
A. good B. favourite C. best D. like
45. " _____ do you like the *Modern English* programme? " - "Because it helps me with my English."
A. What B. How C. When D. Why
46. My brother wants to become a _____ to tell TV viewers what the weather is like.
A. newsreader B. actor C. weatherman D. producer
47. TV _____ can join in some game shows through telephone or by mail.
A. people B. weathermen C. newsreaders D. viewers
48. _____ are films by pictures, not real people and often for children.
A. Documentaries B. Love stories C. Cartoons D. Detective stories
49. Are there any good programs _____ teenagers on TV tonight?
A. to B. for C. of D. with
50. My father works late tomorrow, so he will _____ the first part of the film on VTV1.
A. miss B. lose C. forget D. cut

3. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. For the more _____ tourists, there are trips into _____ (ADVENTURE) the mountains with a local guide.
2. . She completed her formal _____ in 1995 (EDUCATE)
3. She is an experienced English teacher. I always find her talks _____ (ENTERTAIN) so informative and _____.
4. I was really embarrassed, but then I saw the _____ side (FUN) of it.
5. _____, they organize youth clubs and support for the (LOCAL) unemployed.
6. The government announced plans to _____ the public (NATION)

transport system.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 7. He is a very famous _____. | (MUSIC) |
| 8. We're offering proper training with fully-qualified _____. | (INSTRUCT) |
| 9. There was a really _____ football match on TV last night. | (EXCITE) |
| 10. The _____ population will develop a country. | (EDUCATE) |
| 11. Popper described science as the _____ adventure in the world. | (GREAT) |
| 12. Local _____ are listed in the newspaper. | (ENTERTAIN) |
| 13. The program attracted millions of _____ | (VIEW) |
| 14. That detective film was very _____ | (BORE) |
| 15. Many teenagers are _____ in pop music. | (INTEREST) |
| 16. He was sitting _____ in the living room, watching TV. | (COMFORT) |
| 17. The boy band will give two _____ this week. | (PERFORM) |
| 18. On the game show Family Feud, _____ are family members. | (CONTEST) |
| 19. Cable television offer a wide _____ of special programs. | (VARY) |
| 20. TV stations show foreign series because they can buy them _____ | (CHEAP) |

II. Give the correct form of the words in brackets to finish the letter.

Dear Kay,

Isabella and I are having the (1.GOOD) _____ holiday of our life! We are in Vinabliss Resort, one of the (2.LOVELY) _____ islands in the Eastern Sea. Although it is much (3.SMALL) _____ than Vinaland, there seems to be (4.MUCH) _____ to do than in Vinaland. Moreover, the people here seem to be (5. friendly) _____ than those on other islands. We are staying in the (6.MODERN) _____ hotel I have ever seen. It is far (7.COMFORTABLE) _____ than any other hotels and it is even (8.BIG) _____ than the world-famous Calton hotel. The (9.NEAR) _____ beach is (10.LITTLE) _____ than a hundred metres away, so we can go swimming a lot. It's really good and I want you to be here with us.

Love,

Maltida

4. VERB FORMS

I. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. You should _____ (do) your homework, instead of _____ (watch) TV before dinner.
2. She turned on the radio because she wanted _____ (listen) to some music.
3. _____ (you/ watch) the news on TV last night?
4. What _____ (you/ do) tonight, Hung?

5. Which programme _____ (**Linda/ like**) best?
6. A new series of wildlife programmes _____ (**be**) on at 9 o'clock Monday evenings.
7. My father never _____ (**watch**) romantic films on television.
8. I only let my kids _____ (**watch**) television at the weekends.

II. Put in the verbs in brackets into the gaps and form sentences. Use *will*.

1. Tomorrow it _____ (to rain) in the north-west.
2. My friend _____ (to be) 12 next Monday.
3. Hey John! Wait a minute. I _____ (to have) a word with you.
4. She _____ (to contact) her boss next week.
5. I think you _____ (to get) this job.
6. They _____ (to arrive) at about 6 p.m.
7. The teacher _____ (to explain) this exercise.
8. He _____ (to drop) the bottle of water.
9. Lots of accidents _____ (to happen) in that weather.
10. She _____ (to scream) if you show her the spider.

III. Give the correct form of the verbs.

1. How many languages Hoa (**speak**) _____? - Well, two languages.
2. She always (**borrow**) _____ my bike.
3. My English class (**start**) _____ at 7.15.
4. Look! Somebody (**climb**) _____ up the tree.
5. You (**like**) _____ music?
6. He must (**get up**) _____ early.
7. Nam (**not do**) _____ his homework now.
8. My mum is going to (**be**) _____ here tomorrow.
9. How often you (**take**) _____ a shower? - I take a shower every day.
10. They (**be**) _____ staying at home now.

IV. Fill in each blank with the simple past tense of the verb from the box.

play	go	do	buy	teach	lose	score	win	become	enjoy
------	----	----	-----	-------	------	-------	-----	--------	-------

1. My friends and I _____ swimming yesterday morning.
2. We really _____ the game last Sunday.
3. In 1958, at the age of 17, Pelé _____ his first World Cup.
4. The Canadian hockey team _____ six goals against Switzerland.
5. The home team _____ very well, but they lost the match.
6. My father _____ me how to ride a bike.
7. I _____ a new baseball cap last week.

8. At the age of 17, Messi _____ the youngest official player and goal scorer in the Spanish La Liga.
9. She has a black belt in karate. She first _____ karate when she was seven.
10. Argentina _____ 1 - 0 to Germany in the final.

5. CORRECTION

I. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence.

1. There are much music programmes on TV nowadays.
A B C D
2. Would you like go to the theater with me tonight?
A B C D
3. Mary didn't win the race because of she ran too slowly.
A B C D
4. Where performance in the concert was the most interesting?
A B C D
5. Tom wants to go overseas and he does not have enough money.
A B C D
6. Although the football game was over, but the fans stayed in their seats cheering.
A B C D
7. What do you compare the time you spend watching TV to the time you spend on other activities?
A B C D
8. Children shouldn't spend too much time to watch television.
A B C D
9. Where can we see that cartoon? - At 8.30
A B C D
10. How often do you watch "Thanks God you are here"? One a week.
A B C D
11. Preschool children makes up the biggest TV audience in the USA.
A B C D
12. He likes cartoons so they are funny and colorful.
A B C D
13. Comedy is the more interesting than fashion show.
A B C D
14. He is only sixteen, so he is not allow to drive a car.
A B C D
15. To get from Vancouver and Victoria, you can fly, or you can ride the ferry.

- A B C D
16. I bought a bottle of wine and we drink it together.
- A B C D
17. Lien won the match but she was injured.
- A B C D
18. My new classmate are quite friendly and sociable.
- A B C D
19. Many people work hardly every day to produce TV programmes.
- A B C D
20. The 7 o'clock news tell people what is happening in the world.
- A B C D

II. Each sentence has a mistake. Find and correct it.

Sentence	Correction
1. Maria tried to read a novel in French, and the book was too difficult for her to understand.	_____
2. The waiter was not very nice, or the food was delicious.	_____
3. Although he worked very hard, he still cannot earn enough money to support his family.	_____
4. I wanted to give him some money after he helped me with the car although he absolutely refused to accept it.	_____
5. Everyone is ready for the discussion in spite of him.	_____
6. In spite of I was tired, I managed to finish the work.	_____
7. Is her children a boy or a girl?	_____
8. I forgot to bring the map, or I got lost.	_____
9. He failed the examination because of he didn't study hard enough.	_____
10. I don't like watching films on TV and I like watching them at the cinema.	_____

6. READING

I. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

friends because crazy enjoy programme entertainment restrict

For me TV is the best source of (1)_____. I can relax and have fun at the same time. My favourite TV (2)_____ is "How I met your mother". I like it (3)_____ it is funny and I (4)_____ myself a lot. I watch it every day. The series follows the main character Ted Mosby, and his group of (5)_____ in Manhattan. I am also (6)_____ of "Criminal Minds" and "CSI:NY".

TV is indeed very important for me. I would go (7)_____ if I couldn't watch it for a week. My parents sometimes have to (8)_____ my television viewing, but that's okay.

II. Choose the correct answer for each of the gaps to complete the following text.

Television first came some sixty years ago in the 1950s. Nowadays, it is one of the most (1)_____ sources of entertainment for both the old and the young. Television brings (2)_____ for children, world news, music and many other (3)_____. If someone likes sports, he can just choose the right sports, (4)_____. It is not difficult for us to see why (5)_____ is a TV set in almost every home today.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. A. cheap | B. expensive | C. popular | D. exciting |
| 2. A. news | B. cartoons | C. sports | D. plays |
| 3. A. sets | B. reports | C. channels | D. programmes |
| 4. A. athletes | B. channel | C. time | D. studio |
| 5. A. it | B. this | C. that | D. there |

III. Read the passage, and decide whether the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

Television is an important invention of the 20th century. It has been so popular that we can't imagine what life would be like if there were no television. Television is a major means of communication and entertainment. It brings pictures and sound from around the world into millions of homes. Through television, viewers can see and learn about people, places and things in distant lands. Television widens our knowledge by introducing new ideas which may lead us to new hobbies and recreations. In addition to the news, television provides us with a variety of programs that can satisfy every taste. Most people now seem to like spending their evenings watching television than to go out.

1. Television is an important means of communication.
2. Television provides us with a variety of programs.
3. Most people don't like watching TV in the evening.
4. Television can't satisfy all our tastes.
5. People can learn many things through TV.

IV. Read the passages carefully. Then answer the questions.

Steve, 13



I love TV. The first thing I do when I wake up is to switch it on. My favourite channel is the Cartoon Network. I watch TV three or four hours a day. My parents think it is too much and they are always telling me to study, read a little or do a sport. But TV is my favourite hobby. I'm addicted to my favourite programmes.

Kate, 14



I know most teens don't like watching the news, but I do. I like to know what is happening around our world. I also enjoy documentaries, especially about wildlife. I'm very curious about the way animals live and how to preserve their habitats. I also enjoy watching live shows and films, mostly comedies and thrillers. I

Rachel, 17



I like TV as everybody else, but now that I'm older I am more selective about the programmes I watch. I used to watch cartoons all the time. Now I like watching the news and some games shows like "Who wants to be a millionaire?", so I don't really spend too much time in front of the box, an hour or two a day... Some programmes are educational and help us to use our imagination, but

1. Which TV programme does Steve like watching?

2. Why does Kate like watching documentaries on wildlife?

3. How much time does Rachel spend watching TV?

4. According to Rachel, what are the benefits of TV?

7. WRITING

I. Make sentences using the future simple tense: will + verb (inf. without to).

Ex: I/ go/ the supermarket/ tomorrow
I'll go to the supermarket tomorrow.

1. We/ travel/ NhaTrang/ next week

~~✎~~

2. Nga and Lan/ visit/ their grandparents

~~✎~~

3. They/ go/ the movies/ tonight

~~✎~~

4. Hoa/ have/ lots of friends/ soon

~~✎~~

5. I/ come/ after lunch

~~✍~~

6. He/ see/ you/ tomorrow afternoon.

~~✍~~

7. My father/ be free/ at 7.30 this evening

~~✍~~

8. The students/ go camping/ next Sunday

~~✍~~

II. Make the sentences using a conjunction: *but; and; or; so*.

1. We know him. We know his friends.

~~✍~~

2. The coat was soft. The coat was warm.

~~✍~~

3. It is stupid to do that. It is quite unnecessary.

~~✍~~

4. I wanted to go. He wanted to stay.

~~✍~~

5. Your arguments are strong. They don't convince me.

~~✍~~

6. You can go there by bus. You can go there by train.

~~✍~~

7. I was feeling tired. I went to bed when I got home.

~~✍~~

III. Make questions for the underlined part in each sentence.

1. I like TV game shows best.

~~✍~~

2. TV viewers can know about the weather in their regions from the weather forecast.

~~✍~~

3. We go to the zoo twice a month.

~~✍~~

4. We can meet in front of the theater at 7.30.

~~✍~~

5. Bob likes the comedy because it makes him laugh.

~~✍~~

6. The documentary lasts forty-five minutes.

~~✍~~

7. Steven Spielberg is the director of the film.

ANSWER KEYS

1. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.

1. C	11. D	21. A	31. C	41. D
2. C	12. A	22. C	32. D	42. A
3. D	13. C	23. B	33. B	43. B
4. D	14. C	24. A	34. B	44. B
5. A	15. C	25. D	35. A	45. A
6. B	16. C	26. C	36. C	46. D
7. B	17. A	27. A	37. A	47. B
8. C	18. B	28. A	38. C	48. C
9. A	19. D	29. B	39. B	49. B
10. D	20. C	30. C	40. A	50. B

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.D	4.D	7.C	10.D	13.D
2.C	5.C	8.B	11.A	14.B
3.D	6.D	9.A	12.C	15.A

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences

1.B	11.B	21.A	31.C	41.D
2.D	12.A	22.C	32.D	42.A
3.C	13.D	23.A	33.B	43.D
4.A	14.C	24.C	34.D	44.B
5.B	15.C	25.B	35.D	45.D
6.B	16.C	26.B	36.C	46.C
7.A	17.A	27.C	37.B	47.D
8.C	18.B	28.C	38.D	48.C
9.D	19.D	29.A	39.B	49.B
10.A	20.B	30.B	40.B	50.A

3. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. adventurous	6. nationalize	11. greatest	16. comfortably
2. education	7. musician	12. entertainments	17. performances
3. entertaining	8. instructor	13. viewers	18. contestants
4. funny	9. exciting	14. boring	19. variability
5. locally	10. educated	15. interested	20. cheaply

II. Give the correct form of the words in brackets to finish the letter.

1. best	2. loveliest	3. smaller	4. more	5. friendlier
6. most modern	7. more comfortable	8. bigger	9. nearest	10. less

4. VERB FORM

I. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. do - watching	2. to listen	3. Did you watch	4. are you doing
5. does Linda like	6. is	7. watches	8. watch

II. Put in the verbs in brackets into the gaps and form sentences. Use *will*.

1. will rain	2. will be	3. will have	4. will contact	5. will get
6. will arrive	7. will explain	8. will drop	9. will happen	10. will scream

III. Give the correct form of the verbs.

1. does .. speak?	2. borrows	3. starts	4. is climbing	5. Do you like?
6. get up	7. is not doing	8. be	9. do you take?	10. are

IV. Fill in each blank with the simple past tense of the verb from the box.

1. went	2. enjoyed	3. won	4. scored	5. played
6. taught	7. bought	8. became	9. did	10. lost

5. CORRECTION

I. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence.

1.A	6.C	11.B	16.C
2.B	7.A	12.B	17.C
3.B	8.D	13.B	18.B
4.A	9.A	14.C	19.B
5.B	10.D	15.B	20.B

II. Each sentence has a mistake. Find and correct it.

1. and → but	6. In spite of → Although
2. or → but	7. children → child
3. cannot → couldn't	8. or → so
4. although → but	9. because of → because
5. in spite of → but	10. and → but

6. READING

I. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

1. entertainment	2. programme	3. because	4. enjoy
5. friends	6. fond	7. crazy	8. restrict

II. Choose the correct answer for each of the gaps to complete the following text.

1.C	2.B	3.D	4.B	5.D
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

III. Read the passage, and decide whether the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

1.T	2.T	3.F	4.F	5.T
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

IV. Read the passages carefully. Then answer the questions.

1. Steve likes watching cartoon.
2. Because she's very curious about the way animals live and how to preserve their habitats.
3. An hour or two a day.
4. Rachel thinks some programmes are educational and help us to use our imagination.

7. WRITING

I. Make sentences using the future simple tense: will + verb (inf. without to).

1. We'll travel to Nha Trang next week.
2. Nga and Lan will visit their grandparents.
3. They'll go to the movies tonight.
4. Hoa will have lots of friends soon.
5. I'll come after lunch.
6. He'll see you tomorrow afternoon.
7. My father will be free at 7.30 this evening.
8. The students will go camping next Sunday.

II. Make the sentences using a conjunction: *but; and; or; so*.

1. We know him and his friends.
2. The coat was both soft and warm.
3. It is stupid and quite unnecessary to do that.
4. I wanted to go but he wanted to stay.
5. Your arguments are strong but they don't convince me.
6. You can go there either by bus or by train.
7. I was feeling tired so I went to bed when I got home.

III. Make questions for the underlined part in each sentence.

1. Which TV programme do you like best?
2. What can TV viewers know from the weather forecast?
3. How often do you go to the zoo?
4. What time/ When can we meet in front of the theater?
5. Why does Bob like the comedy?
6. How long does the documentary last?
7. Who is the director of the film?
8. How many films are on this week on VTV3?
9. How many children around the world enjoy the cartoon "Hello Fatty!"?
10. Where are Pokemon cartoons made?

IV. Write a short paragraph about your favourite TV programme.

Use the clues given.

My favourite TV programme is the game show: *Children are Always Right* on VTV 3 at 8.30 pm on Saturday. It tests your general knowledge about nature, science, etc. I like this programme very much because it is useful, interesting, and exciting. I can learn many interesting facts about the nature, and the world.

=====

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- badminton /'bæd,mɪn·tən/ (n): cầu lông
- volleyball /'vɒl·i,bɒl/ (n): bóng chuyền
- football /'fʊt,bɒl/ (n): bóng đá
- judo /'dʒʊd·ʊ/ (n): võ nhu đạo
- horse race /hɔːrs 'reɪs/ (n): đua ngựa
- basketball /'bæs·kɪt,bɒl/ (n): bóng rổ
- baseball /'beɪs,bɒl/ (n): bóng chày
- tennis /'ten·ɪs/ (n): quần vợt
- table tennis /'teɪ·bəl ,ten·ɪs/ (n): bóng bàn
- regatta /rɪ'gɑː.tə/ (n): cuộc đua thuyền
- eurythmies /yʊ'rɪð mi, yə-/ (n): thể dục nhịp điệu
- gymnastics /dʒɪm'næs·tɪks/ (n): thể dục dụng cụ
- marathon /'mær·ə,θɒn/ (n): cuộc đua ma-ra-tông
- marathon race /'mær·ə,θɒn reɪs/ (n): chạy ma-ra-tông
- javelin throw /'dʒæv·ə·lɪn θrou/ (n): ném lao
- pole vault /'pəʊl ,vɔlt/ (n): nhảy sào
- athletics /æθ'let·ɪks/ (n): điền kinh
- hurdle race /'hʊr·dəl reɪt/ (n): nhảy rào
- weightlifting /'weɪt,lɪf·tɪŋ/ (n): cử tạ
- swimming /'swɪm·ɪŋ/ (n): bơi lội
- ice-skating /'aɪs ,skeɪt/ (n): trượt băng
- water-skiing /'wɔː.tər 'skiː.ɪŋ/ (n): lướt ván nước
- high jumping /'haɪ,dʒʌmp/ (n): nhảy cao
- archery /'ɑː.tʃə·rɪ/ (n): bắn cung

- windsurfing /'wɪnd,sɜːfɪŋ/ (n): lướt ván buồm
- cycling /'saɪ klɪŋ/ (n): đua xe đạp
- fencing /'fenˌsɪŋ/ (n): đấu kiếm
- hurdling /'hɜːdəlɪŋ/ (n): chạy / nhảy qua rào
- athlete /'æθˌlɪt/ (n): vận động viên
- boat /bəʊt/ (n): con thuyền
- career /kə'reɪə/ (n): nghề nghiệp, sự nghiệp
- congratulations /kənˌgrætʃˌə'leɪˌʃənz/ (n): xin chúc mừng
- elect /ɪ'lekt/ (v): lựa chọn, bầu chọn
- equipment /ɪ'kwɪp mənt/ (n): thiết bị, dụng cụ
- exhausted /ɪɡ'zɔːstɪd/ (adj): mệt nhoài, mệt lử
- fantastic /fæn'tæsˌtɪk/ (adj): tuyệt
- fit /fɪt/ (adj): mạnh khỏe
- goggles /'gɒɡˌəlz/ (n): kính (để bơi)
- gym /dʒɪm/ (n): trung tâm thể dục
- last /læst/ (v): kéo dài
- racket /'rækˌɪt/ (n): cái vợt (cầu lông...)
- regard /rɪ'ɡɑːd/ (v): coi là
- ring /rɪŋ/ (n): sàn đấu (boxing)
- skateboard /'skeɪt.bɔːrd/ (n, v) ván trượt, trượt ván
- ski /ski/ (n, v): trượt tuyết, ván trượt tuyết
- skiing /'skiːɪŋ/ (n): môn trượt tuyết
- sports competition /spɔːrts ˌkɒm pi'tɪʃ ən/ (n): cuộc đua thể thao
- sporty /'spɔːr.tɪ/ (adj) khỏe mạnh, đáng thể thao

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

I. THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE (Thì quá khứ đơn)

* THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ "TO BE"

- Động từ "to be" ở thì quá khứ đơn có hai dạng là "was" và "were".

1.1. Khẳng định:

S + was/ were

Trong đó: S (subject): chủ ngữ

🌸 CHÚ Ý:

S = I/ He/ She/ It (số ít) + was

S = We/ You/ They (số nhiều) + were

Ví dụ:

I was very tired yesterday. (Ngày hôm qua tôi cảm thấy rất mệt.)

My parents were in Nha Trang on their summer holiday last year.
(Năm ngoái bố mẹ tôi đi nghỉ mát ở Nha Trang.)

1.2. Phủ định:

S + was/were + not

Đối với câu phủ định ta chỉ cần thêm "not" vào sau động từ "to be".

🌸 CHÚ Ý:

– was not = wasn't

– were not = weren't

Ví dụ:

My brother wasn't happy last night because of losing money.

(Tối qua anh trai tôi không vui vì mất tiền)

We weren't at home yesterday. (Hôm qua chúng tôi không ở nhà.)

1.3. Câu hỏi:

Were/ Was + S ?

– Yes, S + was/ were.

– No, S + wasn't/ weren't.

Câu hỏi ta chỉ cần đảo động từ "to be" lên trước chủ ngữ.

Ví dụ:

Was she tired of hearing her customer's complaint yesterday?

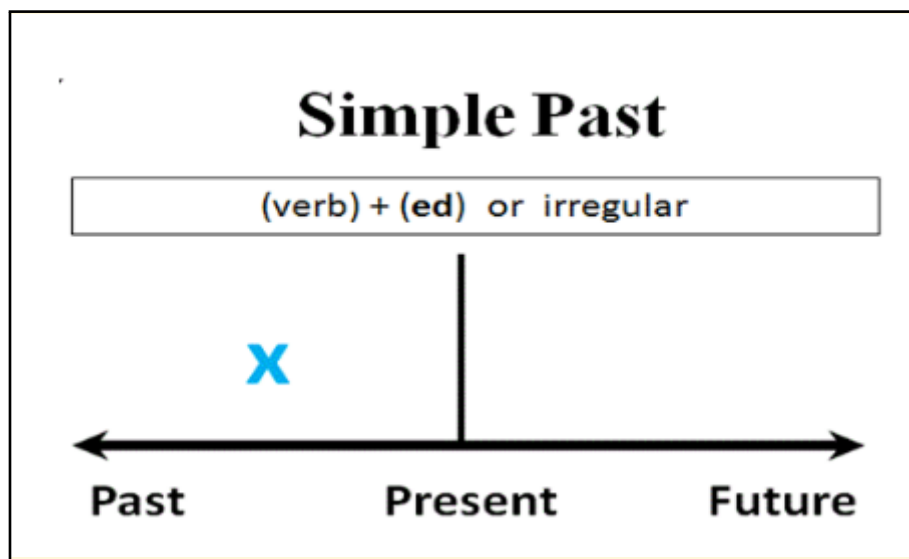
(Cô ấy có bị mệt vì nghe khách hàng phàn nàn ngày hôm qua không?)

Yes, she was./ No, she wasn't. (Có, cô ấy có./ Không, cô ấy không.)

Were they at work yesterday? (Hôm qua họ có làm việc không?)

Yes, they were./ No, they weren't. (Có, họ có./ Không, họ không.)

* THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG.



1. Cách dùng

* Thì quá khứ đơn diễn tả một sự việc xảy ra và kết thúc tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ:

I played football yesterday afternoon. (*Tôi chơi bóng đá chiều hôm qua.*)

* Diễn tả một sự việc xảy ra trong một khoảng thời gian ở quá khứ và đã kết thúc hoàn toàn ở hiện tại.

Được dùng với các cụm từ như: for + khoảng thời gian; from...to...

Ví dụ:

I played football for 3 years. (*Tôi chơi bóng đá được 3 năm.*)

We were in the boat from Monday to Friday of last week.

(*Chúng tôi đã ở trên con thuyền này từ thứ Hai đến thứ Sáu tuần trước.*)

* Diễn tả một chuỗi các hoạt động xảy ra kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ:

She came home, switched on the computer and played game.

(*Cô ấy về nhà, khởi động máy tính và chơi game.*)

2. Cấu trúc câu:

a. Câu khẳng định: S + V-ed/P2

Ví dụ:

I played basketball with my friends yesterday afternoon. (*Hôm qua tôi chơi bóng rổ với các bạn tôi.*)

He went to the gym last week. (*Tuần trước anh ấy đến phòng tập.*)

b. Câu phủ định: S + did not/ didn't + V-infinitive

Ví dụ:

We didn't ski last summer. (*Chúng tôi không trượt tuyết mùa đông năm ngoái.*)

Nam didn't play table tennis. (*Nam không chơi bóng bàn hôm qua.*)

c. Câu hỏi nghi vấn: Did + S + V-infinitive?

Câu trả lời: Có 2 cách:

Yes, S+ did (Có...)

No, S+ did n't. (Không...)

Ví dụ: Did you take in cycling last month? (*Tháng trước cậu tham gia đua xe không?*)

Yes, I did. (*Có.*)

Did he skateboard yesterday? (*Hôm qua anh ấy có chơi lướt ván không?*)

No, He didn't. (*Không*)

3. Dạng quá khứ của động từ thường.

a. Dạng quá khứ của động từ theo quy tắc.

Thêm -ed vào sau những động từ theo quy tắc khi chia ở thì quá khứ đơn.

Ví dụ:

Last year, she worked for a big company. (*Năm ngoái, cô ấy đã làm việc cho một công ty lớn.*)

Last night, he watched a football match. (*Đêm qua anh ấy đã xem bóng đá.*)

Quy tắc thêm -ed

- Động từ kết thúc bằng "-e" thêm "-d" vào sau động từ.

Ví dụ: arrive – arrived

- Động từ có một âm tiết hoặc có hai âm tiết nhưng trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2 và động từ đó kết thúc bằng một nguyên âm + một phụ âm: Gấp đôi phụ âm cuối và thêm -ed.

Ví dụ: stop - stopped, prefer - preferred.

- Động từ kết thúc bằng một phụ âm và "-y" ta chuyển "-y" thành "-i" và thêm "-ed".

Ví dụ: study – studied

- Động từ kết thúc bằng một nguyên âm và "-y" ta thêm "-ed".

Ví dụ: play - played

- **Cách phát âm đuôi -ed**

Phát âm là /ɪd/ khi âm tận cùng của động từ nguyên thể là /t/, /d/.

Ví dụ: started , needed , wanted.....

Phát âm là /t/ khi âm tận cùng của động từ nguyên thể là /k/, /s/, /ʃ/, /f/, /p/, /tʃ/.

Ví dụ: looked , dressed , washed , laughed , stopped , watched

Phát âm là /d/ khi âm tận cùng của động từ nguyên thể là các âm còn lại.

Ví dụ: smiled , played

b. Dạng quá khứ của động từ bất quy tắc

Cách chia động từ bất quy tắc: Xem ở cột 2 trong bảng động từ bất quy tắc hoặc tra từ điển dạng thức quá khứ của các động từ này.

Ví dụ: go- went have- had buy - bought

4. Các trạng từ chỉ thời gian trong quá khứ.

Yesterday: Ngày hôm qua

Yesterday morning: Sáng ngày hôm qua.

Yesterday afternoon: Chiều hôm qua.

Yesterday evening: Tối hôm qua

(Two days, three weeks) *ago*: Hai ngày trước, ba tuần trước....

Last (year, month, week): Năm ngoái, tháng trước, tuần trước

In (2002, June): Năm 2002, vào tháng 6.

From to : Từ thời điểm nào đến thời điểm nào.

In the (2000s, 1980s): Vào những năm 2000, 1980.

In the last century: Vào thế kỷ trước.

In the past: Trước đây.

II. IMPERATIVE MOOD (MỆNH LỆNH THỨC)

Mệnh Lệnh thức là một thể sai khiến, ra lệnh, hay yêu cầu người khác làm một điều gì. Chủ ngữ của câu mệnh lệnh được ngầm hiểu là “you”. Luôn dùng dạng thức nguyên thể (không có to) của động từ trong câu mệnh lệnh. Câu mệnh lệnh được chia làm 2 loại: Trực tiếp và gián tiếp.

1. Câu mệnh lệnh trực tiếp:

- **Cách dùng:**

Dùng để ra lệnh, sai khiến hoặc đề nghị ai làm điều gì. Nó được bắt đầu bằng một động từ nguyên mẫu không "to".

- **Cách thành lập: Verb + Object hay Verb + Preposition.**

Ví dụ: Close the door! (*Đóng cửa lại.*)

Get out of here! (*Ra khỏi đây.*)

2. Câu mệnh lệnh gián tiếp:

Thường được dùng với: *to order/ ask/ say/ tell sb to do smt.*

VD: John asked Jill to turn off the light. (John bảo Jill tắt đèn đi)

Please tell Jaime to leave the room. (Hãy bảo Jaime rời khỏi phòng)

3. Dạng phủ định của câu mệnh lệnh:

- **Cách dùng:** Dùng để ra lệnh, yêu cầu hoặc đề nghị ai đừng làm điều gì.
- **Cách thành lập: "Do not (don't) + V- infinitive + Object.**

Ví dụ: Don't pick flowers. (*Đừng ngắt hoa.*)

Don't beat your friends. (*Không được đánh bạn.*)

4. Câu mệnh lệnh có thể được thành lập với cấu trúc:

Let + Object + V-infinitive

Ví dụ: Let me see. (*Hãy để tôi xem nào*)

Let us go: (*Hãy để chúng tôi đi*)

C. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG:

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>hear</u> | B. <u>fe</u> ar | C. <u>de</u> ar | D. <u>we</u> ar |
| 2. A. <u>ne</u> ar | B. <u>appe</u> ar | C. <u>be</u> ar | D. <u>ide</u> a |
| 3. A. <u>he</u> re | B. <u>the</u> re | C. <u>se</u> ries | D. <u>sph</u> ere |
| 4. A. <u>hate</u> | B. <u>air</u> | C. <u>ch</u> air | D. <u>hair</u> |
| 5. A. <u>pre</u> pare | B. <u>car</u> ry | C. <u>sh</u> are | D. <u>fai</u> r |
| 6. A. <u>ae</u> robic | B. <u>air</u> play | C. <u>rare</u> ly | D. <u>atmosph</u> ere |
| 7. A. <u>unf</u> air | B. <u>pre</u> pare | C. <u>ne</u> arly | D. <u>air</u> plane |
| 8. A. <u>fai</u> ry | B. <u>re</u> ally | C. <u>volunte</u> er | D. <u>ide</u> a |
| 9. A. <u>par</u> ent | B. <u>reinde</u> er | C. <u>upstair</u> s | D. <u>care</u> ful |
| 10. A. <u>care</u> less | B. <u>downstair</u> s | C. <u>armch</u> air | D. <u>fear</u> ful |
| 11. A. <u>squ</u> are | B. <u>badm</u> inton | C. <u>grandf</u> ather | D. <u>mat</u> ch |
| 12. A. <u>ide</u> a | B. <u>re</u> ason | C. <u>fe</u> ature | D. <u>te</u> acher |
| 13. A. <u>ea</u> sy | B. <u>le</u> ase | C. <u>we</u> ak | D. <u>pe</u> ar |
| 14. A. <u>gogg</u> les | B. <u>sport</u> | C. <u>stop</u> | D. <u>not</u> |
| 15. A. <u>mat</u> ch | B. <u>mach</u> ine | C. <u>ch</u> ampion | D. <u>ch</u> ess |
| 16. A. <u>fe</u> ar | B. <u>ne</u> ar | C. <u>re</u> ally | D. <u>we</u> ar |
| 17. A. <u>thei</u> r | B. <u>hair</u> | C. <u>se</u> ries | D. <u>the</u> re |
| 18. A. <u>sp</u> are | B. <u>play</u> | C. <u>game</u> | D. <u>ta</u> ble |
| 19. A. <u>keep</u> | B. <u>che</u> er | C. <u>meet</u> | D. <u>we</u> ek |
| 20. A. <u>sph</u> ere | B. <u>se</u> ries | C. <u>he</u> re | D. <u>wh</u> ere |
| 21. a. <u>fre</u> e | b. <u>tea</u> m | c. <u>read</u> | d. <u>ide</u> a |
| 22. a. <u>swim</u> ming | b. <u>skip</u> ping | c. <u>driv</u> ing | d. <u>fis</u> hing |
| 23. a. <u>rack</u> et | b. <u>skate</u> board | c. <u>game</u> s | d. <u>play</u> er |
| 24. a. <u>thi</u> ng | b. <u>fat</u> her | c. <u>healt</u> hy | d. <u>thr</u> ee |
| 25. a. <u>rack</u> ets | b. <u>gogg</u> les | c. <u>ski</u> s | d. <u>skatebo</u> ards |
| 26. A. <u>thi</u> nk | B. <u>tha</u> t | C. <u>the</u> atre | D. <u>the</u> re |
| 27. A. <u>moth</u> er | B. <u>throu</u> gh | C. <u>leath</u> er | D. <u>ei</u> ther |
| 28. A. <u>the</u> m | B. <u>the</u> y | C. <u>some</u> thing | D. <u>this</u> |
| 29. A. <u>thi</u> rt | B. <u>thou</u> gh | C. <u>fif</u> th | D. <u>than</u> ks |
| 30. A. <u>every</u> thing | B. <u>bro</u> ther | C. <u>the</u> ory | D. <u>bo</u> th |
| 31. A. <u>rou</u> gh | B. <u>su</u> m | C. <u>utt</u> er | D. <u>un</u> ion |
| 32. A. <u>noon</u> | B. <u>too</u> l | C. <u>bloo</u> d | D. <u>spoo</u> n |
| 33. A. <u>che</u> mist | B. <u>chic</u> ken | C. <u>chur</u> ch | D. <u>centu</u> ry |
| 34. A. <u>thou</u> ght | B. <u>tou</u> gh | C. <u>ta</u> ught | D. <u>bou</u> ght |

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 35. A. <u>pleasure</u> | B. <u>heat</u> | C. <u>meat</u> | D. <u>feed</u> |
| 36. A. <u>chalk</u> | B. <u>champagne</u> | C. <u>machine</u> | D. <u>ship</u> |
| 37. A. <u>knit</u> | B. <u>hide</u> | C. <u>tide</u> | D. <u>fly</u> |
| 38. A. <u>put</u> | B. <u>could</u> | C. <u>push</u> | D. <u>moon</u> |
| 39. A. <u>how</u> | B. <u>town</u> | C. <u>power</u> | D. <u>slow</u> |
| 40. A. <u>talked</u> | B. <u>naked</u> | C. <u>asked</u> | D. <u>liked</u> |
| 41. A. <u>hear</u> | B. <u>clear</u> | C. <u>bear</u> | D. <u>ear</u> |
| 42. A. <u>heat</u> | B. <u>great</u> | C. <u>beat</u> | D. <u>break</u> |
| 43. A. <u>blood</u> | B. <u>pool</u> | C. <u>food</u> | D. <u>tool</u> |
| 44. A. <u>university</u> | B. <u>unique</u> | C. <u>unit</u> | D. <u>undo</u> |
| 45. A. <u>mouse</u> | B. <u>could</u> | C. <u>would</u> | D. <u>put</u> |
| 46. A. <u>faithful</u> | B. <u>failure</u> | C. <u>fairly</u> | D. <u>fainted</u> |
| 47. A. <u>course</u> | B. <u>court</u> | C. <u>pour</u> | D. <u>courage</u> |
| 48. A. <u>worked</u> | B. <u>stopped</u> | C. <u>forced</u> | D. <u>wanted</u> |
| 49. A. <u>new</u> | B. <u>sew</u> | C. <u>few</u> | D. <u>nephew</u> |
| 50. A. <u>sun</u> | B. <u>sure</u> | C. <u>success</u> | D. <u>sort</u> |

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. basketball | B. athlete | C. career | D. skateboard |
| 2. A. equipment | B. fantastic | C. replace | D. sporty |
| 3. A. pastime | B. aerobics | C. football | D. swimming |
| 4. A. volunteer | B. competition | C. explanation | D. congratulation |
| 5. A. relax | B. cycling | C. fishing | D. marathon |
| 6. A. popular | B. successful | C. volleyball | D. basketball |
| 7. A. yoga | B. music | C. relax | D. hobby |
| 8. A. individual | B. interest | C. badminton | D. favourite |
| 9. A. sporty | B. indoor | C. outdoor | D. compete |
| 10. A. aerobics | B. humorous | C. practice | D. separate |
| 11. A. modern | B. tennis | C. exhaust | D. useful |
| 12. A. equipment | B. exercise | C. volleyball | D. usually |
| 13. A. sporty | B. active | C. create | D. racket |
| 14. A. sportsperson | B. aerobic | C. marathon | D. Skateboarding |
| 15. A. national | B. article | C. badminton | D. achievement |

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- I usually play football when I have _____.
 A. spare time B. good time C. no time D. times
- In team sports, the two teams _____ against each other in order to get the better score.

- A. are B. do C. make D. compete
3. ____draw on the walls and tables, please .
A. Do B. Don't C. Should D. Shouldn't
4. Nam plays sports very often, so he looks very ____.
A. sport B. sports C. sporty D. sporting
5. Last summer, I _____ fishing with my uncle in the afternoon.
A. go B. went C. goes D. going
6. I like watching football matches, but I am not very good _____ playing football.
A. at B. in C. on D. for
7. Team sports are sometimes called _____ sports.
A. compete B. competition C. competitor D. competitive
8. " ____do you do judo?" - "Twice a week."
A. When B. Where C. How often D. Why
9. ____sports do you like watching on TV? .
A. How B. What C. Do D. How often
10. Football is regarded _____the most popular sport in the world.
A. for B. as C. like D. of
11. Sports and games _____ an important part in our lives.
A. play B. do C. go D. make
12. When you go to the zoo, don't _____ the animals.
A. play B. do C. tease D. watch
13. Playing sports helps us get _____ .
A. fat B. free C. fittest D. fitter
14. Nam's dream is to become a _____ .
A. loser B. champion C. contest D. gamer
15. "I'd like to watch motor racing because it is very _____."
A. frightening B. exciting C. excited D. boring
16. My sister often _____ badminton in her free time.
A. play B. plays C. playing D. to play
17. Marathon is considered a/an _____ sport.
A. team B. individual C. indoor D. sporting
18. Our school football team _____ the match with Tran Phu School last Sunday.
A. wins B. won C. scores D. scored
19. Tam _____ three goals for our team and made it a hat trick.
A. scores B. scored C. plays D. played
20. Blackburn Rover is at the bottom of the league. They _____ most of their matches this season.
A. played B. won C. lost D. scored

21. My friend Mark is very good _____ volleyball. He plays volleyball very well.
 A. in B. on C. at D. with
22. We often go swimming _____ Sunday morning.
 A. in B. on C. at D. for
23. Football is an example of a _____ sport where you play with several other people.
 A. team B. individual C. indoor D. dangerous
24. We were very upset when our favourite team didn't _____ even one goal.
 A. play B. kick C. point D. score
25. Badminton requires only a net, a racket, and a birdie or _____.
 A. ball B. ski C. shuttlecock D. goggles
26. The person who makes sure that a game is played according to the rules is called a _____.
 A. coach B. Climbing C. Not to climb D. Don't climb
27. _____ spectator sports in Britain are cricket and football.
 A. More popular B. The more popular C. Most popular D. The most popular
28. _____ are the Olympic Games held? - Every four years.
 A. When B. Where C. How long D. How often
29. Which sport happens in a ring?
 A. Boxing B. Basketball C. Aerobics D. Swimming
30. I _____ born on the first of May.
 A. were B. was C. are D. is
31. The enemy ._____ by night.
 A. attack B. attacks C. attacked D. did attack
32. Mind about what I just _____ now.
 A. said B. say C. did say D. didn't say
33. Did you ever ._____ of such a thing?
 A. hear B. hears C. heard D. heart
34. He _____ some eggs to make cakes.
 A. buys B. buy C. buied D. bought
35. There ._____ any eggs in the packet when I _____ the kitchen.
 A. was/ come B. were/ come C. was/ came D. were/ came
36. I _____ a English course to improve all the skills.
 A. not joined B. joined C. did joined D. join
37. We _____ to our friend last night.
 A. spoke B. speak C. speaked D. spoken
38. We _____ and _____ lunch at the cafeteria with them.

- A. talked/have B. talked/ had C. talk/had D. talked/ have
39. _____. you attend yoga class when I _____ at home?
- A. Did/ stayed B. Didn't/ didn't stayed
C. Did/ didn't stayed D. Did/ stayed
40. I _____. his car to work while he was sleeping.
- A. drive B. drove C. driving D. driven
41. The man .. _____. the door and .. _____. pieces of paper.
- A. open/ thrown B. opened/ threw
C. opened/ thrown D. open/ throw
42. He _____ them into a room.
- A. led B. lead C. leaded D. leads
43. He . _____ off his hat and _____ into the room.
- A. take/went B. take/go C. taken/go D. took/ went
44. The meeting . _____ 5 minutes ago.
- A. finished B. finish C. did not finish D. did finish
45. When _____ she _____ the report?
- A. do/ finish B. did/ finished C. did/finish D. didn't/ finished
46. I _____. my close friend a cushion for her chair yesterday.
- A. gave B. give C. gived D. given
47. Hoa's neighbor . _____. her and then _____. it very well.
- A. helped/ fits B. helped/ fit C. help/ fitted D. helped/ fitted
48. I . _____ what teacher . _____ in the last lesson.
- A. didn't understand/ said B. didn't understood/ said
C. understand/ say D. understood/ say
49. Yesterday, I _____ to a souvenir shop near the exit of the aquarium.
- A. go B. gone C. went D. goes
50. _____ much do you weigh?
- A. Which B. Who C. What D. How

3. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. Stories about _____ people in the world of sports are **(FAME)** often very interesting.
2. When you open a newspaper, you'll always find _____ about some games. **(INFORM)**
3. Huy's brother is a _____ football player, isn't he? **(PROFESSION)**
4. Please listen to the _____ carefully. **(INSTRUCT)**
5. Did you join the sports _____ last week, Tom? **(COMPETE)**

6. _____! Your team won the first prize. (CONGRATULATE)
7. The _____ in this gym is very modern. (EQUIP)
8. I think sports and games are very _____. (USE)
9. The football fans cheered _____ for their side. (LOUD)
10. I did many sports last week and was _____. (EXHAUST)
11. I love playing football. I want to become a _____ in the future. (FOOTBALL)
12. . I am _____ in practice yoga every day to help me relax. (INTEREST)
13. Many people do exercise regularly to keep fit and _____. (HEALTH)
14. . Peter can play a lot of sports such as football, volleyball, basketball and tennis, etc. He looks quite _____. (SPORT)
15. I won the car in a _____. (COMPETE)
16. If you want to have a _____ body, you should play sport (HEALTH)
17. Our life is much better with the help of modern _____. (EQUIP)
18. The boy fell off his bicycle and _____ broke his arm. (FORTUNATE)
19. Bell experimented with ways of transmitting _____ over a long distance. (SPEAK)
20. My uncle often spends his free time doing volunteer work at a local _____. (ORPHAN)

4. VERB FORMS

I. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I (not be) _____ very happy yesterday.
2. The people in the café (not be) _____ friendly when I was there yesterday.
3. I (leave) _____ my school bag at school this morning.
4. It (be) _____ a great film in 2001.
5. Our teacher (tell) _____ us to be quiet yesterday.
6. I went to the shop but I (not have) _____ any money.
7. Susan (not know) _____ about the exam and she did very badly.
8. I (buy) _____ a ticket for the football match yesterday.

II. Complete the funny story with the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets.

It (1.be) _____ Sunday, the day of the big game. The players (2.arrive) _____ early. They (3. be) _____ excited. Everyone (4.want) _____ to play.

There (5.be) lots of people in the stadium. They (6. wave)_____ and (7.cheer)_____ when the players (8.walk)_____ on to the ground.

The referee (9. call)_____ the captains to the middle. The referee (10. ask)____. "Where is the ball?" Nobody (11. answer)_____.

All the players (12.look) at the ground. There (13.be)_____ no ball. The referee (14.cancel)_____ the game.

III. Read about Fiona Campbell's journey. Fill in the gaps with the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets.

Fiona Campbell was the first woman to walk around the world. She (1. start)_____ her journey in the UK in 1983 and then in 1985 she (2. walk)_____ across the USA. In 1988 she (3. go)_____ from Sydney to Perth in only 95 days. On April 2nd 1991, Fiona (4. leave)_____ Cape Town in South Africa. She (5.arrive)___ in Morocco 29 months later - a journey of 10,000 miles. Then she (6.walk)_____ across Europe and (7. finish)_____ her journey in October 1994. She (8. travel)___ 19,586 miles and (9. raise)___ £120,000 for charity. Fiona also (10. write)_____ a book about her journey called *The Whole Story*.

IV. Complete the text. Use the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

Last year my family (1. go)_____ to Greece on holiday. We (2. meet)_____ a lot of new people and I (3. take)_____ a lot of photographs. We (4. stay)_____ in a good hotel near the sea, and there (5. be)_____ a lot of things to do there. Unfortunately, on the first day I (6. have)_____ some problems. I (7. hit)_____ my head on the bathroom door and then I (8. cut)_____ my finger, so for two days I (9. read)_____ a lot of books and (10. play)_____ games on my laptop. After that I (11. do)_____ a lot of things - swimming, sailing, and so on. When we (12. leave)_____, I (13. be) really tired! I (14. tell)_____ Dad that I needed another holiday!

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts A, B, C or D of each sentence.

1. Did your uncle took you to watch the football match last week?

A B C D

2. Last summer my parents buyed me a lot of different gifts.

A B C D

3. There was many people standing on the street.

A B C D

4. I ate noodles for dinner but I wasn't eat anything for lunch.

A B C D

5. The food was delicious, but most things didn't cheap.

A B C D

6. Albert Park is a relaxed and interesting place to spend the day.

7. This is the most wonderful weather I have experience this week .
A B C D
8. He is going to take an umbrella but it is raining heavily outside.
A B C D
9. She is the most happy woman in the world .
A B C D
10. Skiing , skating and karate are my favourite games .
A B C D
11. Children now spend much time on the internet than watching television.
A B C D
12. There are a lot interesting programmes on Disney Channel.
A B C D
13. I am really boring when I watch documentaries.
A B C D
14. I enjoy to watch game shows or films.
A B C D
15. How many hour a day do you watch television?
A B C D
16. You should always to tell an adult where you are going.
A B C D
17. I'm going to the youth club on Saturday, after I'm going to football match on Sunday.
A B C D
18. I play tennis two times a week, and basketball four times a week.
A B C D
19. I went to the gym last month, but I didn't like it. It was full with noisy teenagers.
A B C D
20. Swimming is Sara's favourite activities, and she always goes to the beach during the holidays.
A B C D

II. Circle and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

Sentences	Correction
1. The children feeled excited before their holiday.	
2. Do you play yoga at home or in a club?	
3. Where was you last weekend? - I was at home.	
4. The car stoped at the traffic lights.	
5. Paul is very tired because he didn't slept well last night.	
6. Do you take part in the marathon last Sunday?	

7. Go straight ahead and then to take the first turning.	
8. When did you buy this house? - We buy it three years ago.	
9. Someone is teaching Julia how to water-ski while she's in holiday.	
10. Sara never goes out for lunch or dinner because she doesn't have many money.	

6. READING

I. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

score without sport each play game positions boring

Basketball is a pretty cheap (1)_____ to play in terms of equipment. So long as you have shoes and clothes and a ball, you can play. You can play with 1 hoop or 2, but it is way more fun to have a full court to (2)_____ on and several friends to do it with. Of course, you can have knee braces, expensive shoes, and some fancy jerseys if you want, but you can play (3)_____ them if you want.

Basketball is a (4)_____ of 5-on-5. There are 5 different (5)_____: point guard, shooting guard, center, small forward, and power forward. Unlike some other sports, all players can (6)_____ points, and there is NO goalkeeper. There isn't a (7)_____ position to play!

Basketball has 4 quarters. For pro games, quarters are 15 minutes. Teams switch directions of play after (8)_____ quarter.

II. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

Physical activity is the (1)_____ obvious benefit of sports participation. Children often spend too much time watching television or (2)_____ video games. But sports practices and games provide an opportunity for exercise that can help keep kids in shape and (3)_____.

Sports participation can help children develop social skills that will benefit them(4)_____ their entire lives. They learn to interact not only with other children their age, (5)_____ also with older individuals in their coaches and sports officials. Kids learn leadership skills, team-building skills and communication skills that will help them in school, their future (6)_____ and personal relationships.

1. A. more B. much C. most D. least
2. A. doing B. playing C. paying D. watching

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|----------|---------------|
| 3. A. healthy | B. wealthy | C. happy | D. funny |
| 4. A. for | B. on | C. at | D. throughout |
| 5. A. and | B. so | C. but | D. then |
| 6. A. world | B. career | C. game | D. shape |

III. Read the passage and choose the correct answers.

Born on 15th May 1987 in Scotland, Andy Murray is regarded as one of the most iconic sports figures in British history. Began playing tennis at the age of 3, Andy was first trained by his mother Judy, who is a tennis coach. In 2012, the Scotsman became the first British man since 1936 to win a Grand Slam, the most important tournament in tennis. He has also won two Olympic gold medals for his country. During his career, Andy has been advocated for equality between tennis players of both genders. Despite criticism from fellow players, he hired a female coach in 2014 and became the first professional male tennis player ever to do so.

- Which of the following would be the best title of the passage?
 - Andy Murray of Scotland.
 - Andy Murray, A Tennis Icon.
 - Grand Slam.
 - Equality Between Tennis Players.
- What did other players criticise Andy for?
 - Hiring a woman to be his coach.
 - Being trained by his mother.
 - Winning a Grand Slam in 2012.
 - Calling for equality between tennis players of both genders.
- Which of the following is NOT stated in the passage?
 - Andy Murray supports gender equality among tennis players.
 - Andy Murray has earned two gold medals in Olympic Games.
 - Grand Slam tournament is the most important tennis event.
 - Andy Murray has become a British sports icon since 2012.
- How many years in Andy's lifetime does the writer mention?
 - The writer mentions 3 years: 1987, 2012 and 2014.
 - The writer mentions 4 years: 1987, 1990, 2012 and 2014.
 - The writer mentions 4 years: 1936, 1987, 2012 and 2014.
 - The writer mentions 5 years: 1936, 1987, 1990, 2012 and 2014.
- Which of the following is FALSE about Andy's first events?
 - He was first trained to play tennis by his mother.
 - He was the first British to win a Grand Slam.
 - He was the first player to win an Olympic gold medal for his country.
 - He was the first male tennis player who had a female coach.

7. WRITING

I. Write the questions for the underlined words or phrases.

Ex: I get up at six every day.

→ *What time do you get up every day?*

1. Minh brushes his teeth twice a day.

~~/~~

2. Simon is in a lot of pain now because he has a toothache.

~~/~~

3. I felt sick after eating that food.

~~/~~

4. Nga went to see the dentist last week.

~~/~~

5. Dr. Lai will check your teeth.

~~/~~

6. It took DrPhong 10 minutes to fill Van's tooth.

~~/~~

7. My brother is going to the hospital.

~~/~~

8. Mr. Cuong did morning exercises at 5.30 yesterday.

~~/~~

9. Hoa received her aunt's letter five days ago.

~~/~~

10. There are twelve students in Lien's class having toothache.

~~/~~

II. Rewrite the following sentences, using the structure of imperative.

Ex: You should go to bed early. Go to bed early.

You should not stay up late. Don't stay up late.

1. You should brush your teeth after meals.

~~/~~

2. You should not play soccer in the street.

~~/~~

3. You should wash and iron your own clothes.

~~/~~

4. You should not eat too much candy.

~~/~~

5. You should wash your hands before meals.

- ✂
 6. You should not worry about the examination.
 ✂
 7. You should tidy your room every day.
 ✂
 8. You should not forget to write to your parents.
 ✂

III. Put the words in the correct order.

1. which/ you/ do/ sports/ at/do/ school?
 ✂
 2.do/ when/ do/ you/ sport?
 ✂
 3. favourite/ are/ your/ who/ sports stars?
 ✂
 4.do/you/ go/ how often/ running?
 ✂
 5.team/ sports/ play/ you/ do?
 ✂
 6. what/ TV/ you/ do/ on/ sports/ watch?
 ✂
 7.football/ is/ what/ favourite/ your/ team?
 ✂
 8.swimming/ you/ do/ go/ how often?
 ✂

IV. What do you say in these situations?

- 1.The class is very noisy when the teacher is away for a few minutes.
 You say, ""
 2.Nam watches too much television but doesn't play any sports.
 You say, ""
 3.The examinations are coming, but your classmate, Hung, doesn't study hard enough.
 You say, ""
 4.The pool is very deep, and it also has rocks.
 You say, ""
 5.Teasing wild animals is very **dangerous**.
 You say, ""

=====

ANSWER KEYS

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.

1. D	11.A	21.D	31.D	41.C
2. C	12.A	22.C	32.C	42.B
3. B	13.D	23.A	33.A	43.A
4. A	14.A	24.B	34.B	44.D
5. D	15.B	25.A	35.A	45.A
6. D	16.D	26.B	36.A	46.C
7. C	17.C	27.B	37.A	47.D

8. A	18.A	28.C	38.A	48.D
9. B	19.B	29.B	39.D	49.B
10. D	20.D	30.B	40.B	50.B

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.C	4.D	7.C	10.A	13.C
2.D	5.A	8.A	11.C	14.B
3.B	6.B	9.A	12.A	15.D

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences

1.A	11.A	21.C	31.B	41.B
2.D	12.C	22.B	32.C	42.B
3.B	13.D	23.A	33.A	43.A
4.C	14.B	24.D	34.A	44.D
5.B	15.B	25.C	35.D	45.A
6.A	16.B	26.B	36.C	46.C
7.D	17.B	27.D	37.B	47.A
8.C	18.B	28.D	38.A	48.D
9.B	19.B	29.D	39.B	49.A
10.B	20.C	30.A	40.C	50.D

③. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. famous	6. Congratulation	11. footballer	16.healthy
2. information	7. equipment	12.interested	17.equipments
3. professional	8. useful	13.healthy	18.unfortunately
4. instructor	9. loudly	14. sporty	19.speech
5. competition	10. exhausted	15. competition	20. orphanage

④. VERB FORM

I. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brac

1. wasn't	2. weren't	3. left	4. was
5. told	6. didn't	7. didn't know	8. bought

II. Complete the funny story with the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets.

1. was	2. arrived	3. were	4. wanted	5. were
6. waved	7. cheered	8. walked	9. called	10. asked
11. answered	12. looked	13. was	14. cancelled	

III. Complete the text. Use the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

1. went	2. met	3. took	4. stayed	5. were
6. had	7. hit	8. cut	9. read	10. played
11. did	12. left	13. was	14. told	

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts A, B, C or D of each sentence.

1.B	6.B	11.B	16.B
2.B	7.C	12.B	17.C
3.A	8.C	13.B	18.B
4.C	9.B	14.B	19.D
5.D	10.D	15.B	20.B

II. Circle and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. feeled → felt	6. Do → Did
2. play → do	7. to take → take
3. was → were	8. buy → bought
4. stop → stopped	9. in → on
5. slept → sleep	10. many → much

6. READING

I. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

1. sport	2. play	3. without	4. game
5. positions	6. score	7. boring	8. each

II. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

1.C	2.B	3.A	4.A	5.C	6.B
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

III. Read the passage and choose the correct answers.

1.B	2.A	3.D	4.B	5.C
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

7. WRITING

I. Write the questions for the underlined words or phrases.

1. How often does Minh brush his teeth?
2. Why is Simon in a lot of pain now?
3. How did you feel after eating that food?
4. When did Nga go to see the dentist last week?
5. Who will check my teeth?
6. How long did it take DrPhong to fill Van's tooth?
7. Where is your mother going?
8. What did MrCuong do at 5.30 yesterday?
9. Whose letter did Hoa receive five days ago?
10. How many students are there in Lien's Class having toothache?

II. Rewrite the following sentences, using the structure of imperative.

1. Brush your teeth after meals.
2. Don't play soccer in the street.
3. Wash and iron your own clothes.
4. Don't eat too much candies.
5. Wash your hands before meals.
6. Don't worry about the examination.
7. Tidy your room every day.
8. Don't forget to write to your parents

III. Put the words in the correct order.

1. Which sports do you do at school?
2. When do you do sports?
3. Who are your favourite sports stars?
4. How often do you go running?
5. Do you play team sports?
6. What sports do you watch on TV?
7. What is your favourite football team?
8. How often do you go swimming?

IV. What do you say in these situations?

1. "You say, "Don't make so much noise/ Keep quiet, please!"
2. "You say, "Don't watch too much TV; play a sport to keep fit!"
3. "You say, "Study harder because the examinations are coming, Hung."
4. "You say, "Don't swim here; it's very deep and it also has rocks."
5. "You say, "Don't tease wild animals; it's very dangerous."

=====

UNIT 9: CITIES OF THE WORLD

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- Asia /'eɪ.ʒə/ (n): châu Á
- Africa /'æf.rɪ.kə/ (n): châu Phi
- Europe /'jʊr.əp/ (n): châu Âu
- Holland /'hɑː.lənd/ (n): Hà Lan
- Australia /ɑː'streɪl.jə/ (n): Úc
- America /ə'mer.ɪ.kə/ (n): châu Mỹ
- Antarctica /æn'tɑːrk.tɪ.kə/ (n): châu Nam Cực
- award /ə'wɔːd/ (n, v): giải thưởng, trao giải thưởng
- common /'kɒm ən/ (adj): phổ biến, thông dụng
- continent /'kɒn.tən.ənt/ (n): châu lục
- creature /'kriː.tʃə/ (n): sinh vật, tạo vật
- design /dɪ'zaɪn/ (n, v): thiết kế
- journey /'dʒɜː.ni/ (n): chuyến đi
- landmark /'lænd.mɑːk/ (n): danh thắng (trong thành phố)
- lovely /'lʌv.li/ (adj): đáng yêu
- musical /'mjuː.zɪ.kəl/ (n): vở nhạc kịch
- palace /'pæl.əs/ (n): cung điện
- popular /'pɒp.jə.lər/ (adj): nổi tiếng, phổ biến
- postcard /'pəʊst.kɑːd/ (n): bưu thiếp
- symbol /'sɪm.bəl/ (n): biểu tượng
- tower /'taʊ.ər/ (n): tháp
- UNESCO World Heritage /juː'nes.koʊ wɜːld 'her.ə.tɪdʒ/ (n): di sản thế giới được UNESCO công nhận
- well-known /'wel'noʊn/ (adj): nổi tiếng

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

I. SUPERLATIVE OF LONG ADJECTIVES

(So sánh hơn nhất của tính từ dài)

Cấu trúc:

S + tobe + the + most + Long-adj + noun/ pronoun

Adjective	Superlative
intelligent	The most intelligent
Exciting	The most exciting
Popular	The most popular
Dangerous	The most dangerous

Ví dụ:

She is **the most beautiful** girl I've ever met. (Cô ấy là cô gái xinh nhất mà tôi từng gặp.)

This car is **the most expensive** of all. (Chiếc ô tô này đắt nhất trong tất cả)

Một số điều cần lưu ý khi sử dụng công thức so sánh hơn nhất trong tiếng anh

+ Một số tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng có tận cùng là “y, le, ow, er” khi sử dụng ở so sánh hơn nhất nó áp dụng cấu trúc so sánh hơn nhất của tính từ ngắn.

Tính từ	So sánh hơn	So sánh hơn nhất
Happy	-> happier	-> the happiest
Simple	-> simpler	-> the simplest
Narrow	-> narrower	-> the narrowest
Clever	-> cleverer	-> the cleverest

II. THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

(Thì hiện tại hoàn thành)

1. Công thức:

Khẳng định:	S + have / has + VpII/-ed
Phủ định:	S + haven't / hasn't + VpII/-ed
Nghi vấn:	(Wh-) + have / has + S + VpII/-ed ...?

2. Cách dùng:

- Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ, kéo dài đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp tục trong tương lai.

Ví dụ:

I have learnt English since 2002. (Tôi học tiếng anh từ năm 2002.)

She has worked in that company for ten years. (Cô ấy làm việc cho công ty đó được 10 năm rồi.)

- Diễn tả một hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng không có thời gian xác định.

Ví dụ: I have read that novel several times. (*Tôi đã đọc cuốn tiểu thuyết đó được vài lần.*)

- Diễn tả một hành động vừa mới xảy ra, hay vừa mới hoàn tất.

Ví dụ: She has just gone out. (*Cô ấy vừa mới ra ngoài.*)

3. Dấu hiệu nhận biết:

Trong câu thường có các từ:

- Never: chưa bao giờ
- Ever: có bao giờ, đã từng
- Just: vừa mới
- Since + mốc thời gian (since 2000/ last summer)
- For + khoảng thời gian (for ages/ two years)
- Already: đã rồi
- How long: bao lâu
- Before: trước đây
- Recently, lately: gần đây
- Yet: chưa (dùng trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi)
- Many times, several times: nhiều lần
- In the past (ten) years: trong (mười) năm qua
- In the last (years): những (năm) gần đây
- So far, up to now, up to the present: cho tới bây giờ
- This is the first time / the second time: đây là lần đầu / lần thứ hai

C. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG:

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>h</u> ome | B. <u>c</u> ome | C. <u>o</u> pen | D. <u>c</u> old |
| 2. A. op <u>e</u> s | B. ge <u>t</u> s | C. ki <u>c</u> k | D. spea <u>k</u> s |
| 3. A. lu <u>n</u> ch | B. wa <u>t</u> ch | C. tea <u>ch</u> er | D. archi <u>t</u> ect |
| 4. A. ci <u>t</u> y | B. fami <u>l</u> y | C. fi <u>f</u> teen | D. tele <u>ph</u> one |
| 5. A. nu <u>m</u> ber | B. plu <u>m</u> | C. pu <u>t</u> | D. bu <u>t</u> |
| 6. A. kil <u>l</u> ed | B. liste <u>n</u> ed | C. perfe <u>c</u> ted | D. prefer <u>r</u> ed |
| 7. A. op <u>e</u> s | B. boo <u>k</u> s | C. mista <u>k</u> e | D. not <u>e</u> s |
| 8. A. ora <u>n</u> ges | B. cha <u>n</u> ges | C. dan <u>c</u> es | D. not <u>e</u> s |
| 9. A. pe <u>n</u> s | B. app <u>l</u> es | C. fin <u>d</u> s | D. like <u>s</u> |
| 10. A. dec <u>i</u> ded | B. post <u>e</u> d | C. stop <u>p</u> ed | D. need <u>e</u> d |
| 11. A. deli <u>c</u> ious | B. li <u>k</u> e | C. ni <u>c</u> e | D. fi <u>n</u> e |

12. A. <u>postcard</u>	B. <u>come</u>	C. <u>home</u>	D. <u>so</u>
13. A. <u>motor</u>	B. <u>money</u>	C. <u>show</u>	D. <u>robot</u>
14. A. <u>near</u>	B. <u>bear</u>	C. <u>idea</u>	D. <u>appear</u>
15. A. <u>here</u>	B. <u>series</u>	C. <u>sphere</u>	D. <u>there</u>
16. A. <u>match</u>	B. <u>square</u>	C. <u>badminton</u>	D. <u>grandfather</u>
17. A. <u>programme</u>	B. <u>sport</u>	C. <u>most</u>	D. <u>show</u>
18. A. <u>thirty</u>	B. <u>them</u>	C. <u>both</u>	D. <u>theme</u>
19. A. <u>schedule</u>	B. <u>when</u>	C. <u>red</u>	D. <u>comedy</u>
20. A. <u>brother</u>	B. <u>through</u>	C. <u>then</u>	D. <u>weather</u>
21. A. <u>prize</u>	B. <u>excite</u>	C. <u>design</u>	D. <u>capital</u>
22. A. <u>cold</u>	B. <u>photo</u>	C. <u>continent</u>	D. <u>poster</u>
23. A. <u>city</u>	B. <u>capital</u>	C. <u>nice</u>	D. <u>excite</u>
24. A. <u>designed</u>	B. <u>received</u>	C. <u>cycled</u>	D. <u>rewarded</u>
25. A. <u>tomorrow</u>	B. <u>tower</u>	C. <u>crowd</u>	D. <u>around</u>
26. A. <u>city</u>	B. <u>cycle</u>	C. <u>symbol</u>	D. <u>bicycle</u>
27. A. <u>weather</u>	B. <u>earth</u>	C. <u>marathon</u>	D. <u>healthy</u>
28. A. <u>hear</u>	B. <u>idea</u>	C. <u>career</u>	D. <u>beach</u>
29. A. <u>school</u>	B. <u>chemistry</u>	C. <u>channel</u>	D. <u>character</u>
30. A. <u>remote</u>	B. <u>popular</u>	C. <u>cold</u>	D. <u>snow</u>
31. A. <u>grammar</u>	B. <u>damage</u>	C. <u>mammal</u>	D. <u>drama</u>
32. A. <u>both</u>	B. <u>tenth</u>	C. <u>myth</u>	D. <u>with</u>
33. A. <u>gate</u>	B. <u>gem</u>	C. <u>gaze</u>	D. <u>gaudy</u>
34. A. <u>thus</u>	B. <u>thumb</u>	C. <u>sympathy</u>	D. <u>then</u>
35. A. <u>lays</u>	B. <u>says</u>	C. <u>stays</u>	D. <u>plays</u>
36. A. <u>candy</u>	B. <u>sandy</u>	C. <u>many</u>	D. <u>handy</u>
37. A. <u>earning</u>	B. <u>learning</u>	C. <u>searching</u>	D. <u>clearing</u>
38. A. <u>waited</u>	B. <u>mended</u>	C. <u>naked</u>	D. <u>faced</u>
39. A. <u>given</u>	B. <u>risen</u>	C. <u>ridden</u>	D. <u>whiten</u>
40. A. <u>cough</u>	B. <u>tough</u>	C. <u>rough</u>	D. <u>enough</u>
41. A. <u>accident</u>	B. <u>jazz</u>	C. <u>stamps</u>	D. <u>watch</u>
42. A. <u>this</u>	B. <u>thick</u>	C. <u>maths</u>	D. <u>thin</u>
43. A. <u>gas</u>	B. <u>gain</u>	C. <u>germ</u>	D. <u>goods</u>
44. A. <u>bought</u>	B. <u>nought</u>	C. <u>plough</u>	D. <u>thought</u>
45. A. <u>spear</u>	B. <u>gear</u>	C. <u>fear</u>	D. <u>pear</u>
46. A. <u>cotton</u>	B. <u>bottle</u>	C. <u>cold</u>	D. <u>common</u>
47. A. <u>dear</u>	B. <u>hear</u>	C. <u>bear</u>	D. <u>clear</u>
48. A. <u>bury</u>	B. <u>curtain</u>	C. <u>burn</u>	D. <u>turn</u>
49. A. <u>folk</u>	B. <u>work</u>	C. <u>pork</u>	D. <u>corn</u>
50. A. <u>shout</u>	B. <u>sugar</u>	C. <u>share</u>	D. <u>surgery</u>

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. finite | B. highlight | C. highway | D. financial |
| 2. A. Africa | B. commercial | C. humorous | D. literature |
| 3. A. manage | B. report | C. resort | D. undo |
| 4. A. repeat | B. create | C. creature | D. receipt |
| 5. A. hospital | B. recommend | C. pottery | D. telephone |
| 6. A. design | B. postcard | C. bamboo | D. refine |
| 7. A. continent | B. necessary | C. important | D. handkerchief |
| 8. A. palace | B. human | C. lantern | D. undone |
| 9. A. well-known | B. import (n) | C. picnic | D. future |
| 10. A. design | B. symbol | C. impose | D. export (v) |
| 11. A. building | B. country | C. major | D. describe |
| 12. A. historic | B. visitor | C. skyscraper | D. dangerous |
| 13. A. dirty | B. around | C. noisy | D. peaceful |
| 14. A. restaurant | B. century | C. amazing | D. prizewinner |
| 15. A. architect | B. remember | C. popular | D. capital |

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- Manchester is famous _____ its football teams.
A. in B. with C. for D. as
- Oxford University was built _____ the 12th century.
A. in B. of C. at D. on
- The Golden Gate Bridge is San Francisco's most famous _____.
A. building B. monument C. palace D. landmark
- The package includes a tour of Sydney's famous _____.
A. Opera House B. Eiffel Tower C. Big Ben D. White House
- _____ a nice day! Shall we go swimming?
A. How B. When C. What D. Which
- France is the most _____ country to visit. It has about 76 million visitors a year.
A. visiting B. expensive C. popular D. relaxing
- _____ do you live in? - Asia.
A. Where B. What country C. What continent D. What city
- The _____ is a mythical creature with the head of a lion and the body of a fish.
A. Komodo Dragon B. Red Kangaroo C. Phoenix D. Merlion
- I really love living in Montreal _____ there are so many places to visit that are nearby.
A. but B. so C. because D. although

10. What is the capital of Greece? - _____
 A. Amsterdam B. Athens C. Stockholm D. Sydney
11. It was the most exciting film I _____.
 A. never saw B. ever saw C. had ever seen D. have ever seen
12. They have been in love with each other _____ they were young.
 A. while B. until C. for D. since
13. I _____ the money from him yet.
 A. haven't received B. don't receive
 C. will receive D. am receiving
14. They _____ for nearly 50 years.
 A. marry B. have been married
 C. married D. will marry
15. How many times _____ there so far? A few times.
 A. have you been B. would you be
 C. were you D. had you been
16. It's at least a month since _____ Tom.
 A. I last seen B. I last see C. I have last seen D. I last saw
17. We _____ almost every lesson in this book so far.
 A. study B. studies C. has studied D. have studied
18. We _____ that television program.
 A. never watch B. not never watch
 C. have never watched D. has never watched
19. Up to then, I _____ such a big fire.
 A. have never seen B. had never seen
 C. never seen D. never see
20. I _____ her since I _____ a student.
 A. know/ am B. knew/ was
 C. have known/ am D. have known/ was
21. _____ get tired of answering the same questions every day?
 A. Have you ever B. Had you ever
 C. Do you ever D. Are you ever
22. She _____ working on that manuscript for 2 years now.
 A. will be B. has been C. had been D. is
23. I _____ there once a long time ago and _____ back since.
 A. went/have not been B. go/am not
 C. have gone/was D. was going/had not been
24. In the last hundred years, traveling _____ much easier and more comfortable.
 A. becomes B. has become C. became D. will become
25. It is raining now. It began raining two hours ago. So it _____ for two hours.

- A. rains B. is raining C. has rained D. rained
26. Mike is playing chess. How long _____ he _____?
- A. did/play B. is/playing
C. has/play D. has/been playing
27. Today is Thursday and she _____ late twice this week. She _____ late yesterday and on Monday.
- A. is/was B. has been/is
C. has been/was D. has been/had been
28. He _____ in the same house since 1975.
- A. has lived B. is living C. lived D. had lived
29. We _____ him since he _____ married.
- A. didn't see/got B. haven't seen/got
C. don't/get D. hadn't seen/got
30. It _____ for two hours and the ground is too wet to play tennis.
- A. is raining B. had rained C. has rained D. was raining
31. Have you ever _____ to London?
- A. be B. being C. been D. gone
32. People in Tokyo are very polite _____ friendly.
- A. or B. and C. but D. so
33. Do you know _____ drink in Viet Nam?
- A. popular B. more popular
C. more and more popular D. the most popular
34. When we were in Stockholm, we had coffee and cakes _____ a coffee shop _____ the Old Town.
- A. on - on B. at - at C. in - in D. on - at
35. The Eiffel Tower is the most _____ landmark in the world.
- A. visit B. visiting C. visited D. to visit
36. Britain's most common _____ activities are watching TV and films, and listening to the radio.
- A. free B. leisure C. good D. popular
37. "I have been to Nha Trang _____. How about you?"
- A. one B. two C. two times D. twice
38. Do you have _____ in Da Lat during your holiday?
- A. time B. good time C. good a time D. a good time
39. Nha Trang has an _____ atmosphere of a young, _____ city.
- A. exciting - growing B. excited - grown
C. exciting - grown D. excited - growing
40. That city is most famous _____ its fashion shops.
- A. to B. with C. for D. of

41. She was attracted by many places of _____ like Van Gogh Museum when she visited Amsterdam.
 A. capital B. continent C. hobby D. interest
42. Zurich and Geneva are some of the most _____ city in the world. You should save a lot of money when you plan to visit them.
 A. dangerous B. polluted C. modern D. expensive
43. I'd love to enjoy _____. Together with pizza, it's one of the most delicious Italian specialities.
 A. spaghetti B. sandwiches C. hamburgers D. fish and chips
44. Sydney Opera House is an outstanding _____ attracting visitors annually.
 A. tower B. landmark C. palace D. university
45. Dragon is considered as one of the most popular _____ with a lot of power and magic.
 A. architectures B. structures C. creatures D. literature
46. Hue Imperial City is one of the UNESCO World _____ sites in Viet Nam.
 A. Global B. Heritage C. Nature D. Ancient
47. My brother and I _____ two bicycles to ride around Xuan Huong Lake when we came to Da Lat.
 A. held B. saved C. rented D. covered
48. The first prize for the winner in this competition consists _____ a million dollar and a gold trophy.
 A. of B. into C. about D. in
49. She _____ this novel three times this year. It's very interesting.
 A. reads B. has read C. read D. is reading
50. Tom and Mary _____ each other for a long time because they're living in two different countries.
 A. didn't meet B. don't meet C. won't meet D. haven't met

3. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. New York is an _____ city with many skyscrapers. (EXCITE)
2. There are many modern _____ in Ho Chi Minh City. (BUILD)
3. William Shakespeare (1564-1616) is a famous _____ in the world. (PLAY)
4. Britain's most common leisure _____ are watching TV and films and listening to the radio. (ACT)
5. Merlion is a _____ with the head of a lion and the body of a fish. (CREATE)

6. Sapa is a wonderful . _____ resort in VietNam. (MOUNTAIN)
7. There are _____ ways of solving problem. (VARIETY)
8. We are waiting for the _____ of his plane (ARRIVE)
9. It's not easy to find cheap _____ at busy times. (ACCOMMODATE)
10. Every week, there are two _____ from Ha Noi to HCM city. (FLY)
11. Tom is working as an _____ to Professor Brown (ASSIST)
12. Read the user's manual carefully, it will give you a lot of useful _____. (INFORM)
13. I didn't sleep very well that night and got a terrible headache the _____ morning (FOLLOW)
14. What's the _____ time of your flight? (DEPART)
15. This knife is _____. It can't cut anything. (USE)
16. He was a talented _____. He created many great buildings in big cities. (DESIGN)
17. Few people want to eat that restaurant because of the _____ smell from the garbage dump nearby (PLEASE)
18. Ben Thanh Market is one of the most famous _____ of Ho Chi Minh City. (SYMBOL)
19. My father has a good _____ of Vietnamese history. (KNOW)
20. Hoan Kiem Place is regarded as one of the _____ landmarks in Ha Noi. (KNOW)

II. Complete the text with the correct form of the adjectives in brackets.

One of the (1.NICE) _____ cities I know is Olomouc in the Czech Republic. The (2.GOOD) _____ thing about the city is that there aren't many tourists. The (3.BUSY) _____ times are when people go to work and come home again. The (4.FAMOUS) _____ place in the Czech Republic is Prague. It is the (5.BIG) _____ city and it is where most people go to. Olomouc is one of the (6.DIFFICULT) _____ places to get to from Prague so people visit other towns and cities nearer to Prague. That's why it's one of the (7. QUIET) _____ cities in the country. What's the (8.BAD) _____ thing about it? It's one of the (9. EXPENSIVE) _____ cities in the country.

4. VERB FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the verbs in the present perfect.

1. Tom (see) _____ this film before.
2. I (finish) _____ my exercise already.
3. They (live) _____ here since 1990.

4. My father (just wash) _____ his car.
5. The students (discuss) _____ the question recently.
6. Mary (never, be) _____ to Ha Noi.
7. We (know) _____ each other for 5 years.
8. So far we (learn) _____ five lessons.
9. We (be) _____ pen pals for a long time.
10. They (stay) _____ here since last week.

II. Put the verbs in brackets in the present perfect or the simple past tense.

1. We (**never watch**) _____ that TV programme.
2. We (**watch**) _____ a good programme on TV last night.
3. He (**read**) _____ that novel many times before.
4. He (**read**) _____ that novel again during my last vacation.
5. I (**have**) _____ a little trouble with my car last week.
6. However, I (**have**) _____ no trouble with my car since then.
7. I (**not see**) _____ John for a long time. I (**see**) _____ him 3 weeks ago.
8. The school bell (**ring**) _____. We must go now.
9. I (**meet**) _____ Mary last night. She (**become**) _____ a very big girl.
10. He is very thirsty. He (**not drink**) _____ since this morning.

III. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb tense.

1. Be careful! The teacher (**look**) _____ at you.
2. The boy (**learn**) _____ for three years, but he can't understand this letter.
3. How long (**you/know**) _____ Paul?
- I (**know**) _____ him for five years.
4. (**she/feed**) _____ the cat yet?
5. We (**not see**) _____ Lan since we (**be**) _____ on holiday last summer.
6. (**she/finish**) _____ her homework yet?
7. (**your dog/ever bite**) _____ anyone?
- Yes, he (**bite**) _____ the postman last month.
8. Would you like some coffee? I (**just/ make**) _____ some.
9. (**you/ ever be**) _____ to Ha Noi?
10. Our school performance (**start**) _____ late last Sunday because of the heavy rain.

IV. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense or form.

1. My father _____ (**watch**) News in 60 Seconds every evening.
2. _____ (**you/ ever/ meet**) a famous football player?
3. Ten years ago, people _____ (**not spend**) as much time on screens as they do today.

4. Mr Gray _____ (**teach**) French here since 2015.
5. We _____ (**fly**) to Washington tomorrow afternoon.
6. Gustave Eiffel _____ (**design**) Eiffel Tower in 1889.
7. Someone _____ (knock) at the door. Can you see who it is?
8. I _____ (not play) basketball because I'm not tall enough.

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts A, B, C or D of each sentence.

1. I often went to a Korean restaurant for dinner with my Family.
A B C D
2. She likes the weather and food in Italy but I didn't.
A B C D
3. He sent me a postcard and a present when he has been there.
A B C D
4. It is the more popular landscape in Europe
A B C D
5. I have receive his letter from Japan for 2 weeks.
A B C D
6. Many people say that Da Nang is one of the more beautiful cities in the Southeast Asia.
A B C D
7. Did you ever tasted Vietnamese noodles called Pho?
A B C D
8. Nam hasn't visited their grandparents in Hue city last summer.
A B C D
9. The weather in Dong Hoi City is the most driest in the region.
A B C D
10. John loves that restaurant and he is eating there many times.
A B C D
11. Can he understand what you were talking about?
A B C D
12. Now I'm a little busy but I will able to spend time with you tomorrow.
A B C D
13. My brother cannot cook very well. He is a chef in a famous French restaurant.
A B C D
14. When I was very young, I could not touch my shoes. But I can't now.
A B C D
15. Despite the arrival of the storm, they won't be able to finish the football match.
A B C D

16. My grandfather was one of the most famous musician of his time. He could play the piano like a professional.
- A B C D
17. I hope that I won't be able to speak English fluently after this course finishes.
- A B C D
18. When Nana was only 2 year old, she could speak mother tongue quite well.
- A B C D
19. Will you be able to work this weekend? There is going be a new project to work on.
- A B C D
20. I was not interested in that game show because it was bored.
- A B C D

Sentences	Correction
1. The flight to Vientiane have departed.	_____
2. When did you came home yesterday?	_____
3. I forget that girl's name already.	_____
4. Fred's brother just graduates from university.	_____
5. I am trying to learn English for years.	_____
6. I have been waiting for two hours, but she not come yet.	_____
7. She reads all the works of Dickens. How many have you read?	_____
8. I wait hare nearly half an hour for my gir-friend Joana; do you think she forgets to come?	_____
9. Mary rests in the garden all day because she is ill.	_____
10. Although John has been studying at the university for five years he have not got his degree yet.	_____

I. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

Hi Steve,

The city looks really amazing. We can't wait to (3)_____ everything! This afternoon, we are going to take a stroll (4)_____ the Centro Storico (Historic Center), which beautiful historic squares – Piazza Campo de' Fiori and Piazza Navona.

Tomorrow morning, we are going to visit Colosseum, the largest amphitheater (6)_____ built in Roman Empire, and then we are (7)_____ up the Palatine Hill. In the afternoon we are going to visit Pasta Museum. It's going to be a great weekend!

I (8)_____ go now. See you when I come back.

Love,

Army

II. Circle the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

Because you travel to the US, you (1)_____ out what documents you need. British people do not (2)_____ to get a visa, but there are different rules for (3)_____ nationalities. (4)_____ example, you don't need to show that you have enough money (5)_____ you. (6)_____ there is one rule you can be sure about: everyone (7)_____ to show their passport. The roads in New York are very busy, but don't worry, you can get around cheaply and easily by subway. Remember that you are not allowed to smoke (8)_____ public transport or in shops. And don't forget that you must tip taxi drivers and waiters. New York is not the most dangerous city in the US, but you really (9)_____ walk along empty streets at night. And it is (10)_____ to travel around in groups.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. must | B. would | C. can | D. could |
| 2. A. ought | B. have | C. should | D. used |
| 3. A. other | B. many | C. different | D. some |
| 4. A. In | B. On | C. For | D. At |
| 5. A. on | B. in | C. of | D. with |
| 6. A. But | B. Then | C. Now | D. And |
| 7. A. could | B. must | C. has | D. should |
| 8. A. in | B. on | C. at | D. by |
| 9. A. shouldn't | B. couldn't | C. wouldn't | D. might not |
| 10. A. safe | B. safer | C. safest | D. more safe |

III. Read the passage and answer the questions.

The Windy City

Chicago, where I am from, is called “the Windy City”. In the winter a cold wind blows off Lake Michigan and it snows a lot. The temperature gets very cold, sometimes below zero.

In the spring, the weather is great. It’s warm and snow melts. People plant gardens and start to play outdoor sports like baseball.

In the summer, it’s hot and sometimes humid. People swim and turn on their air-conditioners to keep cool. Sometimes it rains or we get thunderstorm.

In the fall it’s cool. People prepare for winter and buy warm clothes like coats and hats. The leaves change colors and fall from the trees. It’s very beautiful.

1. When do the leaves change colors in Chicago?

.....

2. When do people plant gardens?

.....

3. When is it humid?

.....

4. When do people prepare for winter?

.....

5. When does it snow?

.....

7. WRITING

I. Make questions for the underlined part in each sentence.

1. London is on the River Thames.

~~/~~

2. The Eiffel Tower first opened on 6th May 1889.

~~/~~

3. We are going to visit the Empire State Building tomorrow.

~~/~~

4. I went to London in my last vacation.

~~/~~

5. The weather in London was very cloudy and wind.

~~/~~

II. Rewrite the following sentence without changing their meaning.

Ex: They were married five years ago.

—> They have *been married for five years*.

1. This is the first time he went abroad.

He hasn’t

2. She started driving 1 month ago.
She has
3. We began eating when it started to rain.
We have
4. I last had my hair cut when I left her.
I haven't
5. The last time she kissed me was 5 months ago.
She hasn't
6. It is a long time since we last met.
We haven't
7. When did you have it?
How long
8. This is the first time I had such a delicious meal.
I haven't
9. I haven't seen him for 8 days.
The last
10. I haven't taken a bath since Monday.
It is

III. Put the words in the correct order.

1. from/ vacation/ come/ Nha Trang/ I/ just have/ a/back/ in.
~~✗~~
2. university/ Viet Nam/ the/ was/ Quoc Tu Giam/ first/ in.
~~✗~~
3. world/ six/ in/ are/ continents/ there/ the.
~~✗~~
4. England/ tower/ it/ famous/ in/ the/ is/ most.
~~✗~~
5. years/ new/ building/ is/ but/ looks/ 100/ more than/ old/ the/ it.
~~✗~~

IV. Write correct sentences, using the words or phrases given.

1. Da Nang/ attract/ lots/ tourists/ because/it/ most beautiful/ beaches/ Viet Nam.
~~✗~~
2. Hoi An/ famous/ old houses and buildings/ traditional crafts.
~~✗~~
3. You/ see/ latest Batman film?
~~✗~~
4. Temple of Literature/ one/ Ha Noi's/ famous/ landmarks.
~~✗~~

5. Merlion/ lion's head/ fish's body/ symbol/ Singapore.

✎

=====

ANSWER KEYS

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

1. B	11.A	21.D	31.B	41.D
2. A	12.B	22.C	32.D	42.A
3. D	13.B	23.B	33.B	43.C
4. D	14.B	24.D	34.D	44.C
5. C	15.D	25.A	35.B	45.D
6. C	16.B	26.D	36.C	46.C
7. A	17.B	27.A	37.D	47.C
8. D	18.B	28.D	38.D	48.A
9. D	19.D	29.C	39.D	49.B
10. C	20.B	30.B	40.A	50.D

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.D	4.C	7.C	10.B	13.B
2.B	5.B	8.D	11.D	14.C
3.A	6.B	9.A	12.A	15.B

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences

1.C	11.D	21.A	31.C	41.D
-----	------	------	------	------

2.A	12.D	22.B	32.B	42.D
3.D	13.A	23.A	33.D	43.A
4.A	14.A	24.B	34.C	44.B
5.C	15.C	25.C	35.C	45.C
6.C	16.C	26.D	36.B	46.B
7.C	17.D	27.C	37.D	47.C
8.D	18.C	28.A	38.D	48.A
9.C	19.A	29.B	39.A	49.B
10.B	20.D	30.C	40.C	50.D

③. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. exciting	6. mountainous	11. assistant	16. designer
2. buildings	7. various	12. information	17. unpleasant
3. playwright	8. arrival	13. following	18. symbols
4. activities	9. accommodation	14. departure	19. knowledge
5. creation	10. flights	15. useless	20. well-known

II. Complete the text with the correct form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. nicest	2. best	3. busiest	4. most famous	5. biggest
6. most difficult	7. quietest	8. worst	9. most expensive	

④. VERB FORM

I. Give the correct form of the verbs in the present perfect.

1. has seen	2. have finished	3. have lived	4. has just washed	5. have discussed
6. has never been	7. have known	8. have learnt	9. have been	10. have stayed

II. Put the verbs in brackets in the present perfect or the simple past tense.

1. have never watched	2. watched	3. have read	4. read	5. had
6. have had	7. haven't seen	8. rang	9. met/became	10. hasn't

	/ saw			drunk
--	-------	--	--	-------

III. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb tense.

1. is looking	2. has learned	3. have...known have known	4. Has she fed	5. haven't seen – were
6. Has she finished	7. Has your dog ever bitten – bit	8. have just made	9. Have you ever been	10. started

IV. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense or form.

1. watches	2. Have you ever met	3. didn't spend	4. has taught
5. are flying	6. designed	7. is knocking	8. don't play

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts A, B, C or D of each sentence.

1.A	6.C	11.A	16.B
2.D	7.A	12.B	17.A
3.C	8.A	13.A	18.B
4.B	9.C	14.D	19.C
5.A	10.C	15.C	20.D

II. Find and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. have → has	6. not come → hasn't come
2. came → come	7. reads → has read
3. forget → have forgotten	8. wait → has waited
4. graduates → has graduated	9. rests → has rested
5. am trying → have tried	10. have → has

6. READING

I. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

1. tourist	2. sunny	3. explore	4. around
5. most	6. ever	7. walking	8. must

II. Circle the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

1. A	2. B	3. C	4. C	5. D
6. A	7. C	8. B	9. A	10. B

III. Read the passage and answer the questions.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. When do the leaves change colours in Chicago? | In the fall. |
| 2. When do people plant gardens? | In the spring. |
| 3. When is it humid? | In the summer. |
| 4. When do people prepare for winter? | In the fall. |
| 5. When does it snow? | In the winter. |

7. WRITING

I. Make questions for the underlined part in each sentence.

1. Where is London?
2. When did the Eiffel Tower first open?
3. What are you going to do tomorrow?
4. Where did you in your last vacation?
5. How was the weather in London?

II. Rewrite the following sentence without changing their meaning.

1. He hasn't been to abroad before.
2. She has driven for one month.
3. We have eaten since it began to rain.
4. I haven't had my hair cut since I left her.
5. She hasn't kissed me for 5 months.
6. We haven't met each other for a long time.
7. How long have you had it?
8. I haven't had such a delicious meal before.
9. The last time I saw him was 8 days ago.
10. It is Monday since I took a bath.

III. Put the words in the correct order.

1. I have just come back from a vacation in Nha Trang.
2. Quoc Tu Giam was the first university in Viet Nam.
3. There are six continents in the world.
4. It is the most famous tower in England.
5. The building is new, but it looks more than 100 years old.

IV. Write correct sentences, using the words or phrases given.

1. Da Nang attracts lots of tourists because it has the most beautiful beaches in Viet Nam.
2. Hoi An is famous for the old houses and buildings, and traditional crafts.
3. Have you ever seen the latest Batman film?

4. The Temple of Literature is one of Ha Noi's famous landmarks.
5. Merlion with a lion's head and a fish's body is the symbol of Singapore.



UNIT 10: OUR HOME IN THE FUTURE

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- apartment /ə'pɑ:t·mənt/ và flat /flæt/ (n): căn hộ

Hai từ này thường được sử dụng với cùng một nghĩa là “căn hộ”. Tuy nhiên, theo thói quen, có nơi thì những căn hộ nhỏ được gọi là apartment và những căn hộ lớn hơn, có thể chiếm diện tích cả một tầng sẽ được gọi là flat.

- condominium /ˌkɒn·də'mɪni·əm/ (n): chung cư

- penthouse /'pent·haʊs/ (n): tầng trên cùng của một tòa nhà cao tầng

- basement apartment /'beɪs·mənt ə'pɑ:t·mənt/ (n): căn hộ tầng hầm

- houseboat /'haʊs,bɔʊt/ (n): nhà thuyền

- villa /'vɪl·ə/ (n): biệt thự

- cable television (TV cable) /'keɪ·bəl 'tel·əˌvɪʒ·ən/ (n): truyền hình cáp

- fridge /frɪdʒ/ (n): tủ lạnh

- wifi (Wireless Fidelity) /'waɪ'faɪ/: hệ thống mạng không dây sử dụng sóng vô tuyến

- wireless /'waɪər·ləs/ (adj, n): vô tuyến điện, không dây

- wireless TV /'waɪər·ləs,ti:'vi:/(n) ti vi có kết nối mạng không dây

- appliance /ə'plɑɪ·əns/ (n): thiết bị, dụng cụ

- automatic /ˌɔːtə'mæt·ɪk/ (adj): tự động

- castle /'kæs·əl/ (n): lâu đài

- comfortable /'kʌm·fər·tə·bəl/ (adj): đầy đủ, tiện nghi

- dry /draɪ/ (v): làm khô, sấy khô

- helicopter /'hel·ɪ,kɑp·tər/ (n): máy bay trực thăng

- hi-tech /'haɪ'tek/ (adj): kỹ thuật cao

- iron /aɪrən/ (v): bàn là, ủi (quần áo)

- look after /lʊk 'æf tər/ (v): trông nom, chăm sóc

- modern /'mɑd·ərn/ (adj): hiện đại

- motorhome /'məʊtə,həʊm/ (n): nhà lưu động (có ô tô kéo)

- skyscraper /'skɒɪ,skreɪ.pər/ (n): nhà chọc trời
- smart /smɑ:rt/ (adj): thông minh
- solar energy /,səʊ.lə 'en.ə.dʒi/ (n) năng lượng mặt trời
- space /speɪs/ (n) không gian vũ trụ
- special /'speʃ.əl/ (adj) đặc biệt
- UFO /ju:.'ef'əʊ/ viết tắt của từ Unidentified Flying Object (n) vật thể bay, đĩa bay

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

SIMPLE FUTURE TENSE

(Thì tương lai đơn)

1. Cấu trúc của thì tương lai đơn

Khẳng định	S + will + V(nguyên thể)
Phủ định:	S + will not + V(nguyên thể)
Câu hỏi:	Will + S + V(nguyên thể)
Trả lời:	Yes, S + will./ No, S + won't.

2. Cách sử dụng của thì tương lai đơn

- Diễn tả một quyết định, một ý định nhất thời nảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói.

Ví dụ: - Are you going to the supermarket now? I will go with you.

(Bây giờ bạn đang tới siêu thị phải không? Tôi sẽ đi với bạn.)

Ta thấy quyết định đi siêu thị được nảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói khi thấy một người khác cũng đi siêu thị.

- I will come back home to take my document which I have forgotten.

(Tôi sẽ về nhà để lấy tài liệu mà tôi để quên.)

Ta thấy đây cũng là một quyết định tức thời ngay tại thời điểm nói.

- Diễn tả một dự đoán không có căn cứ.

Ví dụ: - I think she will come to the party. (Tôi nghĩ rằng cô ấy sẽ tới bữa tiệc.)

Ta thấy đây là một dự đoán chủ quan không có căn cứ nên ta sử dụng thì tương lai đơn để diễn đạt.

- She supposes that she will get a better job.

(Cô ấy tin rằng cô ấy sẽ kiếm được một công việc tốt.)

- Diễn tả một lời hứa hay lời yêu cầu, đề nghị.

Ví dụ: - I promise that I will tell you the truth. (Tôi hứa là tôi sẽ nói với bạn sự thật.)

Đây là một lời hứa nên ta sử dụng thì tương lai đơn để diễn đạt.

- Will you please bring me a cup of coffee? (Bạn làm ơn mang cho tôi một cốc cà phê được không?)

Đây là một lời đề nghị nên ta cũng sử dụng thì tương lai đơn để diễn đạt.

- Sử dụng trong câu điều kiện loại một, diễn tả một giả định có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại và tương lai.

Ví dụ: - If she comes, I will go with her. (Nếu cô ấy đến, tôi sẽ đi với cô ấy.)

Ta thấy việc “cô ấy đến” hoàn toàn có thể xảy ra nên ta sử dụng câu điều kiện loại I để diễn đạt và mệnh đề chính ta sử dụng thì tương lai đơn.

- If it stops raining soon, we will go to the cinema.

(Nếu trời tạnh mưa sớm thì chúng tôi sẽ đi tới rạp chiếu phim.)

Ta thấy việc “tạnh mưa sớm” hoàn toàn có thể xảy ra nên ta sử dụng câu điều kiện loại I để diễn đạt và mệnh đề chính ta sử dụng thì tương lai

3. Dấu hiệu nhận biết thì tương lai đơn

- In + thời gian: trong ... nữa (in 2 minutes: trong 2 phút nữa)

- Tomorrow: ngày mai

- Next day: ngày hôm tới

- Next week/ next month/ next year: Tuần tới/ tháng tới/ năm tới

Trong câu có những động từ chỉ quan điểm như:

- Think/ believe/ suppose/ ...: nghĩ/ tin/ cho là

- Perhaps: có lẽ

- Probably: có lẽ

MIGHT FOR FUTURE POSSIBILITY

1. Cấu trúc

Dạng khẳng định	S + might + V-infinitive
Dạng phủ định	S + might not + V-infinitive

2. Cách dùng

- “Might” được dùng để diễn tả một khả năng trong hiện tại

Ví dụ: We'd better phone tomorrow, they might asleep now

(Chúng ta nên gọi lại vào ngày mai, có thể bây giờ họ đang ngủ)

- Ngoài ra nó còn có thể diễn đạt một khả năng trong tương lai

Ví dụ: I might be a winner in the next match.

(Tôi có thể sẽ là người chiến thắng trong trận đấu tiếp theo)

C. BÀI TẬP:

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>f</u> arm | B. wa <u>r</u> n | C. pa <u>r</u> k | D. ga <u>r</u> den |
| 2. A. ora <u>n</u> ge | B. cabba <u>g</u> e | C. lemo <u>n</u> ade | D. sausa <u>g</u> e |
| 3. A. <u>c</u> hest | B. lun <u>ch</u> | C. be <u>n</u> ch | D. <u>s</u> chool |
| 4. A. lettu <u>c</u> e | B. t <u>u</u> be | C. mu <u>s</u> ic | D. bea <u>u</u> tiful |
| 5. A. noodle <u>s</u> | B. shou <u>l</u> ders | C. packe <u>t</u> s | D. tomatoe <u>s</u> |
| 6. A. wire <u>l</u> ess | B. fri <u>d</u> ge | C. hi- <u>t</u> ech | D. applia <u>n</u> ce |
| 7. A. <u>U</u> FO | B. fu <u>t</u> ure | C. poll <u>u</u> te | D. stu <u>d</u> ent |
| 8. A. spa <u>c</u> e | B. dra <u>w</u> | C. <u>a</u> utomatic | D. mo <u>r</u> e |
| 9. A. ma <u>c</u> hine | B. hi- <u>t</u> ech | C. loca <u>t</u> e | D. <u>c</u> able |
| 10. A. watche <u>d</u> | B. droppe <u>d</u> | C. wash <u>e</u> d | D. travel <u>e</u> d |
| 11. A. <u>t</u> his | B. <u>th</u> ere | C. breathe | D. breath <u>e</u> |
| 12. A. <u>a</u> sk | B. <u>a</u> ngry | C. ma <u>n</u> ager | D. da <u>m</u> age |
| 13. A. notebo <u>k</u> | B. hope <u>n</u> g | C. co <u>ck</u> | D. potat <u>o</u> |
| 14. A. engine <u>r</u> | B. ve <u>r</u> b | C. de <u>e</u> r | D. me <u>r</u> ely |
| 15. A. da <u>m</u> | B. pla <u>n</u> ning | C. pla <u>n</u> e | D. ca <u>n</u> dle |
| 16. A. <u>t</u> heory | B. <u>th</u> erefore | C. ne <u>i</u> ther | D. wea <u>th</u> er |
| 17. A. sho <u>o</u> t | B. mo <u>o</u> d | C. po <u>o</u> r | D. smoo <u>th</u> |
| 18. A. se <u>a</u> t | B. hea <u>v</u> y | C. rea <u>s</u> on | D. nea <u>t</u> |
| 19. A. kisse <u>d</u> | B. helpe <u>d</u> | C. force <u>d</u> | D. wante <u>d</u> |
| 20. A. ba <u>r</u> n | B. ca <u>n</u> 't | C. <u>a</u> unt | D. ta <u>m</u> e |
| 21. A. plea <u>s</u> ure | B. so <u>u</u> nd | C. sa <u>m</u> e | D. be <u>s</u> t |
| 22. A. fo <u>o</u> t | B. po <u>o</u> l | C. mo <u>o</u> n | D. fo <u>o</u> d |
| 23. A. bir <u>t</u> h | B. <u>th</u> eir | C. my <u>th</u> | D. fi <u>f</u> th |
| 24. A. tra <u>y</u> s | B. sa <u>y</u> s | C. ba <u>y</u> s | D. da <u>y</u> s |
| 25. A. su <u>r</u> e | B. so <u>p</u> u | C. su <u>g</u> ar | D. ma <u>ch</u> ine |
| 26. A. nake <u>d</u> | B. wicke <u>d</u> | C. be <u>l</u> oved | D. confus <u>e</u> d |
| 27. A. plumbe <u>r</u> | B. do <u>u</u> bt | C. de <u>b</u> t | D. herba <u>g</u> e |
| 28. A. clothe <u>s</u> | B. go <u>n</u> e | C. dro <u>v</u> e | D. gh <u>o</u> st |
| 29. A. hea <u>r</u> | B. clea <u>r</u> | C. swea <u>r</u> | D. ea <u>r</u> |
| 30. A. hea <u>t</u> | B. grea <u>t</u> | C. bea <u>t</u> | D. tea <u>ch</u> |

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 31. A. <u>e</u> ssential | B. de <u>l</u> icious | C. <u>s</u> hare | D. <u>c</u> inema |
| 32. A. va <u>l</u> leys | B. fo <u>r</u> ests | C. ri <u>v</u> ers | D. wa <u>t</u> erfalls |
| 33. A. fi <u>r</u> ework | B. fri <u>d</u> ge | C. i <u>n</u> credible | D. hi <u>s</u> toric |
| 34. A. pa <u>s</u> sed | B. wa <u>t</u> ched | C. pl <u>a</u> yed | D. wa <u>s</u> hed |
| 35. A. pr <u>o</u> ud | B. ab <u>o</u> ut | C. ar <u>o</u> und | D. w <u>o</u> uld |
| 36. A. m <u>a</u> rket | B. de <u>p</u> art | C. c <u>a</u> rd | D. sc <u>a</u> re |
| 37. A. m <u>a</u> kes | B. wr <u>i</u> tes | C. t <u>a</u> kes | D. dr <u>i</u> ves |
| 38. A. <u>e</u> ating | B. r <u>e</u> ading | C. t <u>e</u> aching | D. br <u>e</u> akfast |
| 39. A. s <u>ch</u> ool | B. <u>ch</u> ildren | C. <u>ch</u> eck | D. <u>ch</u> ubby |
| 40. A. ex <u>c</u> iting | B. <u>c</u> ity | C. bi <u>c</u> ycle | D. <u>c</u> ircle |
| 41. A. t <u>e</u> aching | B. sp <u>e</u> aking | C. w <u>e</u> aring | D. m <u>e</u> aning |
| 42. A. <u>e</u> nd | B. pa <u>l</u> ace | C. c <u>e</u> ntral | D. s <u>e</u> nd |
| 43. A. f <u>u</u> nnny | B. l <u>u</u> unch | C. s <u>u</u> n | D. co <u>m</u> puter |
| 44. A. ph <u>o</u> to | B. g <u>o</u> ing | C. br <u>o</u> ther | D. h <u>o</u> me |
| 45. A. s <u>ch</u> ool | B. t <u>e</u> aching | C. <u>ch</u> ess | D. <u>ch</u> alk |
| 46. A. c <u>o</u> ld | B. v <u>o</u> lleyball | C. t <u>e</u> leph <u>o</u> ne | D. <u>o</u> pen |
| 47. A. m <u>e</u> at | B. r <u>e</u> ading | C. br <u>e</u> ad | D. s <u>e</u> at |
| 48. A. tr <u>a</u> dition | B. de <u>c</u> orate | C. m <u>a</u> ke | D. <u>A</u> pril |
| 49. A. g <u>a</u> thering | B. g <u>e</u> nerous | C. g <u>u</u> est | D. g <u>r</u> eat |
| 50. A. s <u>p</u> ring | B. s <u>p</u> ea <u>k</u> | C. s <u>h</u> ould | D. s <u>u</u> mm <u>e</u> r |

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. houseboat | B. motorhome | C. apartment | D. cottage |
| 2. A. special | B. modern | C. wireless | D. machine |
| 3. A. appliance | B. dishwasher | C. countryside | D. factory |
| 4. A. robot | B. locate | C. iron | D. cable |
| 5. A. control | B. giant | C. solar | D. software |
| 6. A. computer | B. helicopter | C. future | D. century |
| 7. A. replace | B. supply | C. provide | D. sorrow |
| 8. A. city | B. police | C. village | D. castle |
| 9. A. surround | B. mountain | C. ocean | D. countryside |
| 10. A. apartment | B. balcony | C. appliance | D. invention |
| 11. A. future | B. locate | C. solar | D. wireless |
| 12. A. surround | B. cottage | C. robot | D. planet |
| 13. A. motorhome | B. skyscraper | C. appliance | D. probably |
| 14. A. temperature | B. supermarket | C. comfortable | D. automatic |
| 15. A. holiday | B. camera | C. internet | D. location |

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Young people _____ obey their parents.
A. must B. will C. may D. ought to
2. Laura, you and the kids just have dinner without waiting for me. I _____ work very hard today.
A. can B. should C. may D. would
3. I _____ be delighted to show you round the factory.
A. ought to B. would C. might D. can
4. Leave early so that you _____ miss the bus.
A. didn't B. shouldn't C. won't D. mustn't
5. Jenny's engagement ring is enormous! It _____ have cost a fortune.
A. must B. will C. might D. should
6. You _____ to write them today.
A. should B. had C. must D. ought
7. I hope I _____ find it.
A. will B. could C. shall D. must
8. Unless he runs he _____ catch the train.
A. will B. wouldn't C. mustn't D. won't
9. _____ you be in Rome tonight?
A. Will B. Might C. May D. Maybe
10. We _____ have time to help you tomorrow.
A. may B. will C. must D. could
11. "_____ you hand me that pair of scissors, please?"
A. May B. Shall C. Will D. Should
12. Don't phone Ann now. She _____ be having lunch.
A. might B. can C. must D. has to
13. In the future, machines _____ all the work for us.
A. are doing B. will do C. were doing D. do
14. Every day, Mr. Tuan _____ in the fields from 6 am to 4 pm.
A. worked B. work C. is working D. works
15. When _____ Vietnamese people celebrate the New Year?
A. will B. are C. do D. is
16. Our dog is amazing - it _____ sing!
A. should B. must C. can D. might
17. Bring your umbrella - it _____ rain later.
A. can B. might C. must D. should
18. All students _____ wear their uniforms to school.
A. should B. will C. may D. must
19. We _____ wash our hands before we have our meals.

- A. could B. can C. should D. might
20. _____ we go to the beach today? ~ Great!
- A. Shall B. Will C. Might D. Should
21. Students _____ use a dictionary during the test. It's forbidden.
- A. can't B. mustn't C. might not D. won't
22. I _____ go to the football match but I don't know yet.
- A. can't B. shouldn't C. might not D. mustn't
23. Ingrid _____ play the violin when she was six.
- A. can't B. could C. might D. shouldn't
24. _____ you like something to drink?
- A. Could B. Should C. Will D. Would
25. I'm afraid of water because I _____ swim.
- A. can't B. may C. couldn't D. must
26. Super cars will _____ water in the future.
- A. go by B. run at C. run on D. travel by
27. The robot will _____ of the flowers in the garden.
- A. take care B. take note C. be careful D. carry
28. The house will have a super smart TV to _____ the e-mails.
- A. send and post B. send and receive
C. get and take D. receive and get
29. _____ pencils and paper, every student will have a computer .
- A. By B. Instead C. Instead of D. At
30. We might have a _____ TV to watch TV programmes from space.
- A. wireless B. remote C. automatic D. local
31. I would like to have my house by _____ so we can see the beach from my window
- A. the mountains B. the city C. the sea D. the countryside
32. A hi-tech robot will help us _____ children while we are away.
- A. look out B. look at C. look after D. look in
33. We might have robots _____ our meals.
- A. cook B. to cook C. cooking D. to cooking
34. I might have a smart phone _____ the Internet.
- A. surf B. to surf C. surfing D. to surfing
35. We also watch films _____ smart phones.
- A. in B. at C. on D. to
36. "Do you think we will _____ holiday to the Moon?"
- A. go B. go on C. go on the D. go for
37. "Will you have a car _____ can fly into space?"
- A. it B. this C. what D. that
38. We will use special cards to _____ the doors and _____ the engine.

A. open - stop B. open - start C. control - stop D. drive - start

39. "Do you think that our houses will be ____ space?"

A. in B. on C. at D. to

40. Our future houses will use _____ energy, and they are very friendly to the environment.

A. sun B. sunny C. solar D. lunar

41. We will have more robots _____ they can help us do housework and protect our houses.

A. so B. because C. so that D. although

42. A super smart TV will help us _____ goods from the supermarket.

A. take B. buy C. carry D. order

43. We will have a robot in the garden _____ the flowers and _____ the dogs and cats.

A. cut-take B. water - feed C. feed - take D. water - to wash

44. With a smart watch, you will _____ your friends in other countries.

A. speak B. talk C. say D. contact

45. Robots will help us do the housework such as _____ the floors, _____ meals and so on.

A. clean - cook B. to clean - to cook

C. cleaning – cooking D. cleaning - to cook

46. He hopes he will reduce the monthly cost of gas when he uses _____ energy for cooking foods or heating water.

A. warm B. solar

C. sunlight D. hot

47. He believes that he saw a _____ flying in the sky last night. He was scared that the aliens would appear and take him out of the earth.

A. ship B. motorhome C. lantern D. UFO

48. He's living in a _____ on a large river. It's very convenient for him to catch fish every day.

A. palace B. airplane C. houseboat D. flat

49. There are a lot of _____ in her big city. I can't count how many floors there are.

A. skyscrapers B. spaces C. programmes D. tractors

50. She can keep vegetables and fruits fresh in her _____ during a long time.

A. helicopter B. modern fridge

C. electric cooker D. spaceship

③. WORD FORMS

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. I think the most useful and convenient _____ of all household _____ is the microwave oven. (APPLY)

2. I would like to have a _____ TV in my future house. (WIRE)
3. She lives in a small village and its _____ are very beautiful. (SURROUND)
4. Most people want to live in a _____ house. (COMFORT)
5. Do you think all the cars in the future will run on _____. (ELECTRIC)
6. When the weather's hot, the windows will close _____. (AUTOMATIC)
7. I have to find a convenient _____ for the television. (LOCATE)
8. The modern appliance will control the _____ in the house. (TEMPER)
9. I think UFOs might be the _____ of people. (IMAGINE)
10. There might be a _____ park in the centre of city in the future (TECH)
11. When will they finish the _____ of your house? (DECORATE)
12. Many reports talked a lot about the _____ of UFOs (APPEAR)
13. She would love to have a bed that _____ makes itself every morning (AUTOMATIC)
14. Her imagination of a perfect home will be a quiet _____ and beautiful house located by the sea. (SPACE)
15. Robots in the future house will be smart to make our lives as _____ as possible. (COMFORT)
16. The house is in beautiful _____. (SURROUND)
17. The _____ in the future houses helps them make more efficient use of energy compared to ordinary houses. (TECH)
18. In most country, there are organizations especially for _____. (TEEN)
19. We are rehearsing a play for the school anniversary _____. (CELEBRATE)
20. The glass pieces are dried _____. (COMPLETE)

4. VERB FORMS

I. Complete the story with the Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

It (1. be) _____ a sunny day. Helen (2. walk) _____ to the park. In the park she (3. phone) _____ her friend Daisy. Helen (4. wait) _____ for 15 minutes and Daisy (5. arrive) _____. The girls (6. walk) _____ to the river. There (7. be) _____ two boys there. Suddenly the big boy (8. push) _____ the small boy into the river. Helen (9. jump) _____ into the river to rescue the boy. Daisy (10. phone) _____ the ambulance and the police. The doctors and police (11. arrive) _____. They (12. interview) _____ the girls.

II. Complete the dialogue with the *Present Perfect* or the *Simple Past* of the verbs in brackets.

Minh: I (1. just, hear) _____ that Hung is in Australia.

Mai: Oh, (2. You/not know) _____ that? He (3. fly) _____ there at the beginning of the month.

Minh: (4. you/ hear)_____ from him? Does he like the life there?

Mai: Yes, I (5. get)_____ a letter last week. He (6. tell)_____ me about his study. But he (7. not say)_____ whether he (8. like)_____ the life or not. Perhaps it's too early to say. He (9.be)_____ there for only three weeks. He (10. never/ be)_____ to a foreign country before.

III. Put the verbs in brackets in the present perfect or the simple past tense.

1. I _____ (do) all the housework. The flat is really clean now.
2. He _____ (write) a novel for two years, but he _____ (not finish) it yet.
3. My brother _____ (leave) home 10 years ago. I _____ (never/ meet) him again since then.
4. I like your car. How long _____ you _____ (have) it?
5. What _____ you _____ (do) last weekend? _____ (play) golf?
6. Mai _____ (buy) a new dress last week, but she _____ (not wear) it yet.
7. Mr. Quang _____ (teach) Math in this school since he _____ (graduate) from the university in 1989.
8. _____ you _____ (hear) of Agatha Christie? She _____ (be) a novels writer. You _____ (read) any of them
9. When I _____ (get) home last night, I _____ (be) very tired and I _____ (go) straight to bed.
10. Daniel _____ (earn) some money last week. But I'm afraid he _____ (already/ spend) it all.

IV. Complete the dialogue. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Nam: Hi My name's Nam.

Peter: Hello. Nice to meet you, Nam. I'm Peter.

Nam: Are you a newcomer here?

Peter: Yes. I (1. be)_____ here since last week.

Nam: I'm sure you'll love this place.

Peter: I (2. hope)_____ so. How long (3. you/ live)_____ here?

Nam: For 15 years.

Peter: So you must know the area very well. (4. be)_____ there a post office near here?

Nam: Yes. There (5. be)_____ one next to my house. Why?

Peter: Because I (6. want)_____ to send this postcard to my family.

Nam: Oh! It (7. look)_____ very beautiful. Where (8. be)_____ your family?

Peter: In London. (9. you/ ever be)_____ there, Nam?

Nam: Not yet. But I (10. go)_____ there with my father next summer holiday.

Peter: That's great. I hope to see you again there.

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts A, B, C or D of each sentence.

1. She will takes you to the town on Monday.
A B C D
2. Don't worry. You will have a lots of friends soon.
A B C D
3. Where do we meet her? – We'll meet her in the cave.
A B C D
4. How long will the plan last? – It will lasts for three years.
A B C D
5. The wedding will be held on May.
A B C D
6. What does she go to school? – On foot.
A B C D
7. I don't think will she come back.
A B C D
8. The meeting will be held from 9:00 A.M at 10:00 A.M.
A B C D
9. Where will the house is located?
A B C D
10. What time will he has breakfast tomorrow?
A B C D
11. I dislike walk in the rain. I like lying in the sunshine.
A B C D
12. Her mother bought lots of appliance for her house last week.
A B C D
13. She might sees beautiful view of the city through the window.
A B C D
14. I think she might not finds our address.
A B C D
15. We will have special remote control units to surfing the Internet.
A B C D
16. The weather is going to be rain tomorrow.
A B C D
17. If we plant more trees, the air will be more fresh.
A B C D
18. He might comes to the meeting with his friends on time.
A B C D
19. If you will help me, I will lend you my new bike.

A B C D

20. Members in my family often eat some ice-cream after dinner.

A B C D

II. Find and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

Sentences	Correction
1. What are you doing? ~ I draw my future house.	
2. My future house will be in the ocean.	
3. Robots will help people doing the housework.	
4. What will your future house be? ~ It'll be by the sea.	
5. One day, we might to travel to the moon for holiday.	
6. My future house will look like an UFO and it'll be in the mountain	
7. Harry think we might have robots take care of our children.	
8. My dream house will be surrounding by blue sea.	
9. How much is a bowl of noodles? They are 20 thousand dong.	
10. Our future house should produce all of the energy it need	

6. READING

I. Read the text, then do the tasks.

The home of the future

When you're out of the house, is the fridge on the phone to the supermarket? Is the heating system having a word with the bath? And when you get back home, does the doorknob recognise you and say hello? Probably not, but in the house of the future all this - and more - is possible.

Researchers say that technology will transform your home in ways you can only dream about. Nanotechnology will play an important role. It will clean your windows. Intelligent spoons will check how hot or cold your soup is and the walls will sense if anyone is in your garden.

The next generation of fridges will use the Internet to make sure your food stays fresh and they'll get in touch with the supermarket to order some more and you'll never run out of milk again.

When you are on the way home and feel like a warm bath, all you have to do is sending a text message to the heating system. The heating system warms the water and even runs the bath so that as soon as you walk through the front door, you can jump in and relax.

Welcome to the smart home of the future!

- nano technology (n):

công nghệ nano (công nghệ chế tạo và sử dụng những thiết bị cực nhỏ)

A. Match the words with their meaning.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. heating system (n) | _____ a. communicate with |
| 2. doorknob (n) | _____ b. discover or find out |
| 3. transform (v) | _____ c. a system for making a building warm |
| 4. sense (v) | _____ d. use up or finish all of something |
| 5. get in touch with (idm) | _____ e. a round handle that you turn to open a door |
| 6. run out of (phr.v) | _____ f. change completely |

B. Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. Houses in the future will be smarter than today's houses.
2. Nanotechnology will help protect your house.
3. The fridge will remind you when to go to the supermarket.
4. You can control your heating system by using text messages.
5. Researchers say a smart house is just a dream.

II. Read the passage and answer the questions.

A lovely house

Peter lives in a house near the sea. It's an old house, about 100 years old, and it's very small. There are two bedrooms upstairs but no bathroom. The bathroom is downstairs next to the kitchen and there's a living room where there is a lovely fireplace. There's a garden in front of the house. The garden goes down to the beach and in spring and summer there are flowers everywhere. Peter lives alone with his dog, Boxer, but they have a lot of visitors. Their city friends often stay with them. Peter loves his house for many reasons: the garden, the flowers in summer, the fire in winter, but the best thing is the view from his bedroom window. Peter is thinking of a new house in the future with the help of Robots.

1. Where is the house?
.....
2. How old is the house?
.....
3. How many rooms are there upstairs?
.....
4. Is there a bathroom upstairs?
.....
5. Is there a fire place in the kitchen?
.....

6. What's the dog's name?

.....

7. Who often come to stay with them?

.....

8. What reasons does Peter love his house?

.....

III. Choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

Dear Sir,

I (1)_____ Ha Long Bay with my brother (2) _____October 21st to 23rd.
(3)_____you have a double room with a shower for these days? How (4)_____is
the room? We would like a room facing (5) _____, if it is possible. Is there a
restaurant in the hotel? We (6) _____meat but we (7) _____ all other kinds of
food. We (8) _____ arriving in Ha Long Bay (9) _____about 6 o'clock on
Friday evening. We plan to leave the hotel (10) _____ Sunday morning.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

Peter Short

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. A. am visiting | B. visit | C. visiting | D. can visit |
| 2. A. from | B. between | C. since | D. at |
| 3. A. Do | B. Does | C. Can | D. Must |
| 4. A. many | B. long | C. much | D. far |
| 5. A. sea | B. a sea | C. the sea | D. some sea |
| 6. A. not eat | B. don't eat | C. aren't eating | D. not eating |
| 7. A. are like | B. liking | C. like | D. am liking |
| 8. A. am | B. is | C. are | D. have |
| 9. A. on | B. in | C. to | D. at |
| 10. A. in | B. on | C. at | D. to |

7. WRITING

I. Write the question with WILL for each situation.

1. Mrs. Robinson will go shopping. (What/ she/buy)

~~Q~~

2. They are meeting Paul at the station. (When/he/arrive)

~~Q~~

3. We won't have a meeting on Thursday. (When/you/have/ a meeting)

~~Q~~

4. We will go to the cinema. (Where/you/go)

~~Q~~

5. My parents will go to Hanoi this summer. (How/ they/ travel)

~~✍~~

II. Write the sentences with WILL, using the given words or phrases.

1. my mother/ make/ a big meal/ tonight

~~✍~~

2. I/ finish/ work/ 6 p.m

~~✍~~

3. I /not have/ a birthday party/ this year.

~~✍~~

4. you / meet/ Lan/ tonight?

~~✍~~

5. we/ take/ our cousins/ holiday/us.

~~✍~~

6. my friends/ not come/ tonight.

~~✍~~

7. he/ catch/ the train/ London/ 9 o'clock.

~~✍~~

8. I/ not come/ class/ tomorrow.

~~✍~~

9. my grandmother/ visit/us/ Saturday.

~~✍~~

10. you / stay / home/ this weekend?

~~✍~~

III. Write sentences with "will", using the words or phrases given.

1. Students/ class 6A/ plant/ some trees/ school yard/ tomorrow morning.

~~✍~~

2. Tourists/ stop/ restaurant/a short time.

~~✍~~

3. My children/ spend/ their holiday/ a farm.

~~✍~~

4. My mother/ prepare/ food/ my birthday party/ next week.

~~✍~~

5. Hoa/ see/ her parents/ the country.

~~✍~~

6. They/ have/ an important test/ Friday.

~~✍~~

7. Workers/ build/ more bridges/ this area.

~~✍~~

8. They/ travel/ Ha Noi/ by air.

~~/~~

9. They/ cut down/ some trees/ schoolyard.

~~/~~

10. It/ rain/ soon.

~~/~~

IV. Write a short paragraph describing the house in which you want to live in the future.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

=====

ANSWER KEYS

1. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.

1. B	11.D	21.A	31.D	41.C
2. C	12.A	22.A	32.B	42.B
3. D	13.C	23.B	33.A	43.D
4. A	14.B	24.B	34.C	44.C
5. C	15.C	25.B	35.D	45.A
6. B	16.A	26.D	36.D	46.B
7. C	17.C	27.D	37.D	47.C
8. A	18.B	28.B	38.D	48.A
9. A	19.D	29.C	39.A	49.B
10. D	20.D	30.B	40.C	50.C

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.C	4.B	7.D	10.B	13.C
2.D	5.A	8.B	11.B	14.D
3.A	6.A	9.A	12.A	15.D

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences

1.A	11.A	21.B	31.C	41.C
2.B	12.A	22.C	32.C	42.D
3.B	13.B	23.B	33.B	43.B
4.C	14.D	24.D	34.B	44.D
5.A	15.C	25.A	35.C	45.C
6.C	16.C	26.C	36.B	46.B
7.C	17.B	27.A	37.D	47.D
8.D	18.D	28.B	38.B	48.C
9.A	19.C	29.C	39.A	49.A
10.B	20.A	30.A	40.C	50.B

3. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. appliance	6. automatically	11. decoration	16. surrounding
2. wireless	7. location	12.appearance	17.technology
3. surrounding	8. temperature	13.automatically	18. teenagers
4. comfortable	9. imagination	14. spaceful	19. celebration
5. electricity	10. technological	15. comfortable	20. completely

4. VERB FORM

I. Complete the story with the Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

1. was	4. waited	7. were	10. phoned
2. walked	5. arrived	8. pushed	11. arrived
3. phoned	6. walked	9. jumped	12. interviewed

II. Complete the dialogue with the *Present Perfect* or the *Simple Past* of the verbs in brackets.

1. have just heard	2. Didn't you know	3. flew	4. Have you heard	5. got
6. told	7. didn't say	8. liked	9. has been	10. has never

				been
--	--	--	--	------

III. Put the verbs in brackets in the present perfect or the simple past tense

1. have done	6. bought, hasn't worn
2. has written, hasn't finished	7. has taught, graduated
3. left, have never met	8. Have you heard, is, Have you read
4. have you had	9. got, was, went
5. did.. .do, did.. .play	10.earned, has already spent

IV. Complete the dialogue. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. have been	2. hope	3.have you lived	4. Is	5. is
6. want	7. looks	8. is	9. Have you ever been	10. will go

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts A, B, C or D of each sentence.

1.A	6.A	11.A	16.C
2.C	7.C	12.C	17.D
3.B	8.D	13.A	18.A
4.C	9.C	14.C	19.A
5.D	10.B	15.C	20.D

II. Find and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. draw → am drawing	6. an→ a
2. in → on	7.think → thinks
3. doing→ do	8. surrounding → surrounded
4. 4. What →Where	9. They are -> It is
5. to travel → travel	10 need→ needs

6. READING

I. Read the text, then do the tasks.

A	1.c	2.e	3.f	4.b	5.a	6.d
B	1.T	2.T	3.F	4.T	5.F	

II. Read the passage and answer the questions.

1. It's near the sea.
2. It's about 100 years old.
3. There are two bedrooms upstairs.
4. No, there isn't
5. No, there isn't
6. The dog's name is Boxer.
7. Their city friends often come to stay.with them.

8. Peter loves his house for many reasons: the garden, the flowers in the summer, the fire in winter, but the best thing is the view from his bedroom window.

III. Choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

1. A	2. A	3.A	4. C	5. C
6.B	7.C	8.C	9.D	10. B

7. WRITING

I. Write the question with WILL for each situation.

1. What will she buy?
2. When will he arrive?
3. When will you have a meeting?
4. Where will you go?
5. How will they travel?

II. Write the sentences with WILL, using the given words or phrases.

1. My mother will make a big meal tonight.
2. I will finish my work at 6 p.m.
3. I won't have a birthday party this year.
4. Will you meet Lan tonight?
5. We will take our cousins on this holiday with us.
6. My friends won't come tonight.
7. He will catch the train to London at 9 o'clock.
8. I won't come to the class tomorrow.
9. My grandmother will visit us on Saturday.
10. Will you stay at home this weekend?

III. Write sentences with "will", using the words or phrases given.

1. Students in class 6A will plant some trees in school yard tomorrow morning.
2. Tourists will stop at the restaurant for a short time.
3. My children will spend their holiday on a farm.
4. My mother will prepare food for my birthday party next week.
5. Hoa will see her parents in the country.
6. They will have an important test on Friday.
7. Workers will build more bridges in this area.
8. They will travel to Ha Noi by air.
9. They will cut down some trees in the schoolyard.
10. It will rain soon.

=====

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- air pollution /eər pə'luːʃən/ (n): ô nhiễm không khí
- soil pollution /sɔɪl pə'luːʃən/ (n): ô nhiễm đất
- deforestation /diːfɔːr.ə'steɪ.ʃən/ (n): nạn phá rừng, sự phá rừng
- noise pollution /nɔɪz pə'luːʃən/ (n): ô nhiễm tiếng ồn
- water pollution /'wɔːtər pə'luːʃən/ (n): ô nhiễm nước
- be in need /bɪ ɪn nid/ (v): cần
- cause /kɔːz/ (v): gây ra
- charity /'tʃær.ɪ.ti/ (n): từ thiện
- disappear /ˌdɪs.ə'piər/ (v): biến mất
- do a survey /du eɪ 'sʌr.veɪ/ (v): tiến hành cuộc điều tra
- effect /ɪ'fekt/ (n): ảnh hưởng
- electricity /ɪˌlek'trɪs.ət.i/ (n): điện
- energy /'en.ər.dʒi/ (n): năng lượng
- environment /ɪn'vɔɪ.rən.mənt/ (n): môi trường
- exchange /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/ (v): trao đổi
- invite /ɪn'vaɪt/ (v): mời
- natural /'nætʃ.ər.əl/ (adj): tự nhiên
- pollute /pə'lut/ (v): làm ô nhiễm
- pollution /pə'luːʃən/ (n): sự ô nhiễm
- president /'prez.ɪ.dənt/ (n): chủ tịch
- recycle /ri'saɪ.kəl/ (v): tái chế
- recycling bin /ˌriː'saɪ.klɪŋ bɪn/ (n): thùng đựng đồ tái chế
- reduce /rɪ'dus/ (v): giảm
- refillable /ˌriː'fɪl.ə.bəl/ (adj): có thể bơm, làm đầy lại

- reuse /ri'ju:z/ (v): tái sử dụng
- sea level /'si ,lev·əl/ (n): mực nước biển
- swap /swɒ:p/ (v) trao đổi
- wrap /ræp/ (v) gói, bọc

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

A CONDITIONAL SENTENCE – TYPE 1

(CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN LOẠI 1)

- Câu điều kiện dùng để nêu lên một giả thiết về một sự việc, mà sự việc đó chỉ có thể xảy ra khi điều kiện được nói đến xảy ra.
- Câu điều kiện gồm có hai phần (hai mệnh đề):
- Mệnh đề nêu lên điều kiện (còn gọi là mệnh đề IF) là mệnh đề phụ hay mệnh đề điều kiện. Mệnh đề nêu lên kết quả là mệnh đề chính.
- Khi mệnh đề chứa “if” đứng đầu thì giữa hai mệnh đề ngăn cách với nhau bằng dấu phẩy.
- Khi mệnh đề chứa “if” đứng sau mệnh đề chỉ kết quả thì KHÔNG sử dụng dấu phẩy để ngăn cách hai mệnh đề.

Ví dụ:

You will pass the exam if you work hard. (*Bạn sẽ vượt qua kỳ thi nếu bạn học tập chăm chỉ.*)

If you work hard, you will pass the exam. (*Nếu bạn học tập chăm chỉ, bạn sẽ vượt qua kỳ thi.*)

1. Cấu trúc:

IF + S + V (hiện tại) , S + WILL + V (nguyên mẫu)

2. Cách dùng:

- Chỉ sự việc có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ví dụ:

If it is sunny, I will go fishing. (Nếu trời nắng, tôi sẽ đi câu)

If + Mệnh đề 1 (thì hiện tại đơn giản), Mệnh đề 2 (may/can + V)

- Để chỉ sự khả năng khách quan

Ví dụ:

It's sunny. If we go out without a hat, We may get a headache

(Trời đang nắng. Nếu chúng tôi đi chơi mà không đội mũ, Chúng tôi có thể bị đau đầu)

- Chỉ sự cho phép

Ví dụ:

If you finish your test, You can go home. (Nếu bạn làm xong bài kiểm tra, bạn được phép ra về)

If + Mệnh đề 1 (thì hiện tại đơn giản), Mệnh đề 2 (must + V)

- Để chỉ yêu cầu, đề nghị

Ví dụ: If you want to get good marks, You must do exercises

(Nếu bạn muốn được điểm cao, bạn phải làm bài tập)

C. BÀI TẬP:

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>br</u> own | B. <u>no</u> w | C. <u>bo</u> wl | D. <u>ho</u> w |
| 2. A. <u>pack</u> et | B. <u>egg</u> | C. <u>lett</u> uce | D. <u>le</u> mon |
| 3. A. <u>ch</u> est | B. <u>lun</u> ch | C. <u>ben</u> ch | D. <u>sch</u> ools |
| 4. A. <u>lett</u> uce | B. <u>t</u> ube | C. <u>m</u> usic | D. <u>st</u> udent |
| 5. A. <u>nood</u> les | B. <u>shou</u> lders | C. <u>pack</u> ets | D. <u>tomato</u> es |
| 6. A. <u>mi</u> nd | B. <u>cl</u> imb | C. <u>exc</u> iting | D. <u>desti</u> nation |
| 7. A. <u>s</u> ugar | B. <u>s</u> orry | C. <u>se</u> aside | D. <u>s</u> ummer |
| 8. A. <u>bu</u> sy | B. <u>wh</u> y | C. <u>h</u> istory | D. <u>f</u> amily |
| 9. A. <u>pag</u> e | B. <u>vill</u> age | C. <u>lugg</u> age | D. <u>heri</u> tage |
| 10. A. <u>wh</u> at | B. <u>wh</u> ich | C. <u>wh</u> ere | D. <u>wh</u> o |
| 11. A. <u>a</u> fternoon | B. <u>c</u> an | C. <u>l</u> ack | D. <u>a</u> nimal |
| 12. A. <u>p</u> aper | B. <u>w</u> ay | C. <u>pre</u> pare | D. <u>l</u> ater |

13. A. <u>party</u>	B. <u>glass</u>	C. <u>plant</u>	D. <u>plastic</u>
14. A. <u>happy</u>	B. <u>match</u>	C. <u>package</u>	D. <u>save</u>
15. A. <u>swap</u>	B. <u>vase</u>	C. <u>watch</u>	D. <u>want</u>
16. A. <u>recycle</u>	B. <u>environment</u>	C. <u>charity</u>	D. <u>invite</u>
17. A. <u>paper</u>	B. <u>bag</u>	C. <u>plastic</u>	D. <u>natural</u>
18. A. <u>cousin</u>	B. <u>cycle</u>	C. <u>encourage</u>	D. <u>container</u>
19. A. <u>breathing</u>	B. <u>green</u>	C. <u>breeze</u>	D. <u>bread</u>
20. A. <u>saved</u>	B. <u>polluted</u>	C. <u>enjoyed</u>	D. <u>reused</u>
21. A. <u>arrived</u>	B. <u>helped</u>	C. <u>returned</u>	D. <u>remembered</u>
22. A. <u>serious</u>	B. <u>symptom</u>	C. <u>sure</u>	D. <u>sauce</u>
23. A. <u>lake</u>	B. <u>cabbage</u>	C. <u>population</u>	D. <u>space</u>
24. A. <u>hungry</u>	B. <u>range</u>	C. <u>orange</u>	D. <u>change</u>
25. A. <u>shoulder</u>	B. <u>mountain</u>	C. <u>housework</u>	D. <u>round</u>
26. A. <u>prefer</u>	B. <u>better</u>	C. <u>teacher</u>	D. <u>worker</u>
27. A. <u>bear</u>	B. <u>hear</u>	C. <u>dear</u>	D. <u>near</u>
28. A. <u>collect</u>	B. <u>concern</u>	C. <u>concert</u>	D. <u>combine</u>
29. A. <u>stopped</u>	B. <u>laughed</u>	C. <u>walked</u>	D. <u>stayed</u>
30. A. <u>them</u>	B. <u>theory</u>	C. <u>through</u>	D. <u>thistle</u>
31. A. <u>hire</u>	B. <u>hope</u>	C. <u>honour</u>	D. <u>health</u>
32. A. <u>chemistry</u>	B. <u>study</u>	C. <u>primary</u>	D. <u>apply</u>
33. A. <u>sky</u>	B. <u>deny</u>	C. <u>differently</u>	D. <u>cry</u>
34. A. <u>city</u>	B. <u>special</u>	C. <u>bicycle</u>	D. <u>center</u>
35. A. <u>tables</u>	B. <u>noses</u>	C. <u>boxes</u>	D. <u>changes</u>
36. A. <u>son</u>	B. <u>sugar</u>	C. <u>soup</u>	D. <u>sing</u>
37. A. <u>would</u>	B. <u>where</u>	C. <u>well</u>	D. <u>who</u>
38. A. <u>stopped</u>	B. <u>washed</u>	C. <u>studied</u>	D. <u>looked</u>
39. A. <u>machine</u>	B. <u>armchair</u>	C. <u>children</u>	D. <u>watch</u>
40. A. <u>classes</u>	B. <u>lakes</u>	C. <u>cages</u>	D. <u>houses</u>
41. A. <u>few</u>	B. <u>new</u>	C. <u>sew</u>	D. <u>nephew</u>
42. A. <u>closed</u>	B. <u>practiced</u>	C. <u>asked</u>	D. <u>stopped</u>
43. A. <u>gift</u>	B. <u>mine</u>	C. <u>arrive</u>	D. <u>tired</u>
44. A. <u>family</u>	B. <u>mechanic</u>	C. <u>animal</u>	D. <u>machine</u>
45. A. <u>about</u>	B. <u>south</u>	C. <u>count</u>	D. <u>young</u>
46. A. <u>look</u>	B. <u>school</u>	C. <u>loose</u>	D. <u>food</u>
47. A. <u>nice</u>	B. <u>bicycle</u>	C. <u>rides</u>	D. <u>live</u>
48. A. <u>mine</u>	B. <u>history</u>	C. <u>exercise</u>	D. <u>library</u>
49. A. <u>image</u>	B. <u>travel</u>	C. <u>relax</u>	D. <u>match</u>
50. A. <u>clown</u>	B. <u>down</u>	C. <u>own</u>	D. <u>town</u>

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. reuse | B. reduce | C. prepare | D. mention |
| 2. A. rubbish | B. angry | C. canal | D. nature |
| 3. A. pollute | B. effect | C. picture | D. unique |
| 4. A. disappear | B. environment | C. recycle | D. pollution |
| 5. A. charity | B. expensive | C. creative | D. envelop |
| 6. A. homework | B. breakfast | C. between | D. bookshelf |
| 7. A. engineer | B. telephone | C. intersection | D. lemonade |
| 8. A. unload | B. drugstore | C. museum | D. behind |
| 9. A. lettuce | B. cabbage | C. carrot | D. routine |
| 10. A. banana | B. buffalo | C. favorite | D. beautiful |
| 11. A. picnic | B. reduce | C. plastic | D. water |
| 12. A. recycle | B. natural | C. envelope | D. organise |
| 13. A. deforest | B. creative | C. encourage | D. president |
| 14. A. bottle | B. paper | C. symbol | D. reuse |
| 15. A. material | B. reusable | C. decorate | D. connector |

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- If people _____ public transport, there will be less pollution.
A. use B. will use C. can use D. used
- _____ we miss the last bus, we will have to walk home.
A. As B. When C. If D. Unless
- People have _____ this beach with a lot of trash.
A. spoiled B. cleaned C. collected D. protected
- He got a _____ for parking on double yellow lines.
A. fee B. ticket C. fine D. token
- By sticking labels over the address you can _____. envelopes.
A. recycle B. reduce C. reuse D. return
- Because plastic bags are very hard to _____, they will cause pollution.
A. dissolve B. wrap C. tear D. collect
- These materials can be _____ into other packaging products.
A. reused B. reduced C. removed D. recycled
- If we _____ waste paper, we will save a lot of trees.
A. repeat B. recycle C. rewrite D. remake
- If we plant more trees in the schoolyard, the school will become a _____ place.
A. greener B. darker C. dirtier D. more polluted
- “Why do you often forget to _____ the lights when you go out of the classroom?”

- A. reduce B. turn off C. close D. shut down
11. "What can we do ____ air pollution?"
A. reduce B. to reduce C. reducing D. to reducing
12. You can save money while shopping by only buying _____ you need.
A. what B. a C. this D. that
13. Please collect all recyclable materials, and take them to the _____. factory.
A. recycle B. recycled C. recyclable D. recycling
14. This newspaper is made of _____ paper.
A. recycle B. recycled C. old D. waste
15. If we all use _____ bags, we'll help the environment.
A. new B. cheap C. reusable D. reduced
16. These three Rs _____ reduce, reuse and recycle.
A. stand up B. stand for C. ask for D. means
17. If there is a rubbish bin in every class, the classroom will become _____.
A. harmful B. lighter C. dirtier D. cleaner
18. "Don't throw rubbish into the river because you will make it _____"
A. greener B. dirty C. cleaner D. fresher
19. If we use _____ paper, we will save a lot of trees.
A. fewer B. less C. more D. much
20. I _____ you if you need my help.
A. am helping B. could help C. will help D. helped
21. If someone _____ into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?"
A. comes B. came C. will come D. would come
22. If you _____ all of my questions, I _____ anything to help you.
A. don't answer / can't do B. didn't answer/ won't do
C. wouldn't answer/ can't do D. wouldn't answer/ couldn't do
23. "Here's my phone number." - "Thanks, I _____ you a call if I _____ some help."
A. will give / will need B. would give/ needed
C. give/need D. will give/ need
24. The teacher was absent today, so the class was canceled. If she _____ absent again tomorrow, class _____ tomorrow, too.
A. is / will cancel B. is/ will be canceled
C. was / would be canceled D. was/ would cancel
25. I won't lend you this money _____ you promise to pay it back.
A. in case B. if C. otherwise D. unless
26. _____ there are some more ideas, we can end the meeting now.
A. Unless B. If C. As if D. In case
27. "It's really raining." "Yes. If the weather _____, we'll have to camp somewhere else.
A. would get worse B. might get worse

- C. gets worse D. should get worse
- 28.If anyone_____him I _____ back at 9 o'clock.
A. calls / tell / will be B. called / telling / would be
C. is calling / tells / am D. will call / to tell / am
- 29.If she asks for money, I _____ her.
A. will give B. gave C. would give D. would have given
- 30.If I _____this exam, I'll go to the university next summer.
A. pass B. to pass C. had passed D. passed
- 31._____more information, please telephone our main office.
A. If you will need B. Should you need
C. You should need D. If you needed
- 32.If Jack refuses to help, we _____ manage without him.
A. have to B. will have to
C. had to D. are having to
- 33.I cannot buy a new computer_____ I save enough money.
A. if B. even if C. unless D. as if
- 34.You will get a good seat if you _____ first.
A. come B. came C. have come D. will come
- 35.We'll be late unless we _____ now.
A. leave B. don't leave C. had left D. have left
- 36.We can reuse _____ .
A. water B. air C. noise D. bottles
- 37.What does "reduce" mean?
A. using something again B. using something more
C. using something less D. collect something
- 38.What does "reuse" mean?
A. using something again B. using something more
C. using something less D. collect something
- 39.We shouldn't _____ rubbish on the street.
A. throw B. reuse C. wrap D. turn off
- 40.Polluted water can make fish _____.
A. live B. sleep C. grow D. die
- 41.Soil pollution can lead to lack _____ food.
A. for B. in C. on D. of
- 42.Almost 27,000 trees are cut _____ every day just to make toilet paper!
A. off B. down C. up D. in
- 43.The three Rs _____ reduce, reuse and recycle.
A. mean by B. turn to C. stand for D. put up

- 44 You shouldn't throw those papers away; they're _____.
 A. refillable B. reducible C. recyclable D. repayable
45. We should use reusable shopping bags _____ plastic bags.
 A. instead of B. because of C. in spite of D. place of
46. Thousands of people donated money and food to those in _____.
 A. length B. need C. order D. space
47. _____ pollution can cause hearing loss.
 A. Air B. Water C. Noise D. Soil
48. Turn off the tap _____ you brush your teeth and washing your face.
 A. when B. if C. because D. although
49. If more people cycle, there will be _____ air pollution.
 A. much B. more C. less D. little
50. Which of the following cannot be recycled?
 A. Milk cartons B. Glass bottles C. Cans D. Plastic bags

3. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. She reused her old carton boxes _____ some interesting toys. (MAKE)
2. People should try to find some _____ protecting methods to reduce current pollution. (ENVIRONMENT)
3. _____ is one of the main reasons causing floods and soil pollution. (FOREST)
4. They encourage people to support _____ products because they are friendly to the environment. (USE)
5. Police are investigating the _____ of a young woman. (DISAPPEAR)
6. She tried her _____ to answer all the questions of the quiz show, so she deserved to be the winner. (GOOD)
7. PETRONAS Twin Towers is one of the most famous _____ in Malaysia. (ARCHITECH)
8. Greenhouse gases trap _____ from the sun in the atmosphere. (HOT)
9. Doing exercise more often can help you keep _____. (FITNESS)
10. You should bring _____ clothes for this cold weather. (SUIT)
11. Some people have hard _____ symptoms because they have lived in polluted atmosphere for a long time. (BREATH)
12. My son solved his own difficult problems very _____ him very much. , so I was so proud of. (INTELLIGENT)

13. He hopes to invent a modern _____ to reduce the amount of polluted gases. (ENGINEER)
14. The source of water in this river is very dirty because it contains a lot of _____. (POLUTE)
15. _____ green products will make our environment clean and safe. (CREAT)
16. Please confirm your _____ date and time if you want to come with us. (ARRIVE)
17. The new that Mr Nam had inherited a million dollars make his friend _____. (EXCITE)
18. The polices are interested in the sudden _____ of the valuable paintings (APPEAR)
19. My elder brother studies hard this year in order to pass the _____ exam to the university. (ENTER)
20. They are very _____ to survive a shipwreck (luck) (LUCK)

4. VERB FORMS

I. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

- If I see him, I (give) _____ him a lift.
- The table will collapse if you (stand) _____ on it.
- If he (eat) _____ all, he will be full.
- If I find your passport, I (telephone) _____ you at once.
- The police (arrest) _____ him if they catch him.
- If he (read) _____ in bad light, he will ruin his eyes.
- Someone (steal) _____ your car if you leave it unlocked.
- What will happen if my parachute (not open) _____?
- If he (wash) _____ my car, I'll give him \$10.
- If she (need) _____ a radio, she can borrow me.

II. Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box in the correct form with "will".

<i>be</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>drive</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>grow</i>
<i>listen</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>speak</i>	<i>wear</i>	<i>win</i>

In the year 2040...

- people _____ on Mars.
- we _____ flying cars.
- people _____ computers in their clothes.
- robots _____ all our homework.
- families _____ food in their homes.
- the world _____ a clean and happy place.

7. we _____ every language in the world by using special computers.
8. the USA _____ the football World Cup.
9. young people _____ to strange music.
10. some people _____ to the Moon for their holidays.

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. We _____ (**stay**) at home if it rains.
2. She will call you if she _____ (**have**) time.
3. If it _____ (**not rain**) tomorrow, we will go for a picnic.
4. If everyone _____ (**recycle**) paper, metal and glass, we _____ (**not produce**) so much rubbish.
5. If you _____ (**not water**) plants, they _____ (**die**).
6. If the weather _____ (**be**) bad, we _____ (**not go**) to the park.
7. We _____ (**save**) thousands of trees if we _____ (**not waste**) so much paper.
8. What _____ (**happen**) if we _____ (**keep**) polluting the environment.
9. If we _____ (**not stop**) cutting down so many trees, we _____ (**endanger**) our oxygen supply.
10. If people _____ (**dump**) chemicals into rivers, they _____ (**not be**) able to swim in them in the future.

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. If people share their cars to go to work, there _____ (**not be**) so many car fumes.
2. I _____ (**study**) here for more than three years.
3. What a nice dress! Where _____ (**you/ buy**) it?
4. Don't forget to take your umbrella. It _____ (**rain**).
5. If we _____ (**recycle**) paper products, we _____ (**save**) more trees.
6. Our class _____ (**organise**) a writing contest. We have to write about the environment.
7. Give old clothes to charity instead of _____ (**throw**) them away.
8. Encouraging people _____ (**use**) public transport is a great way to reduce traffic jams.

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts A, B, C or D of each sentence.

1. If someone came into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?"
A B C D
2. If you try these cosmetics, you look five years younger.
A B C D
3. If you do not understand what were written in the book, you could ask Mr. Pike.
A B C D

- ## II. Find and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

Page | 11

2. My apartment is on the two floor of the Spark building.	
3. The new robot in his palace is able does many things.	
4. She should reuses this bottle to contain water because it is still new and clean. reuse	
5. Electricity can be reduced if people turned off all the electric appliances in one hour.	
6. We should turn on all the lights and fans before we come out of the classroom.	
7. If we turn off the lights when we are not using them, we will saved a lot of electricity.	
8. Recycling start when we put rubbish such as empty bottles and cans in the recycling basket	
9. Have you ever make anything from your old things?	
10. If I give you some money, will you buying some chocolate for me?	

6. READING

I. Put a word/ phrase from the box in each gap to complete the following passage.

hold; picks up; even; help; after; thickly; little; hillsides

Wind, water, air, ice and heat all work to cause erosion. As the wind blows over the land, it often (1)_____ small grains of sand. When these grains of sand strike against solid rocks, the rocks are slowly worn away. In this way, (2) _____ very hard rocks are worn away by the wind.

When particles of rocks or soil became loosened in any way, running water carries them down the (3) _____. Some rocks and soil particles are carried into streams and then into the sea.

Land that is covered with trees, grass and other plants wears away very slowly, and so loses very (4) _____ of its soil. The roots of plants help to (5) _____ the rocks and soil in place. Water that falls on grasslands runs away more slowly than water that falls on bare ground. Thus, forests and grasslands (6) _____ to slow down erosion.

Even where the land is (7) _____ covered with plants, some erosion goes on. In the spring, the melting snow turns into a large quantity of water that then runs downhill in streams. As a stream carries away some of the soil, the stream bed gets deeper and deeper. (8) _____ thousands of years of such erosion, wide valleys are often formed.

- New words: erosion(n): sự xói mòn grain (n): hạt strick (v): va mạnh
worn(v) mòn bare (adj): trần trụi

II. Read the passage then choose the correct answers.

Green Cities

What makes a city green? It's a huge challenge for cities to be earth-friendly. Not only do they have lots of people, buildings, traffic, trash, and air pollution, but they also consume more than half of the world's energy.

Many cities in the world have taken up the challenge to be earth-friendly. Look at what some of these cities have done:

Reykjavik, Iceland, is run entirely on green energy. Its transit system uses hydrogen buses and most of its buildings use non-polluting energy sources like geothermal and hydroelectricity.

Malmo and Stockholm in Sweden are noted for their green spaces and parks and for successfully cleaning up their water and air.

Portland, Oregon, was one of the first American cities to focus on earth-friendly transit with light-rail and bike paths to encourage people to leave their cars at home.

Curitiba, Brazil, uses unique green methods for maintenance. Their grass parks are trimmed by sheep!

Vancouver, British Columbia, uses wind, solar, and water energy to generate power. Nearly all of the city is powered by clean hydroelectricity.

1. In what country is Malmo?
A. Brazil B. Spain C. Sweden D. Iceland
2. How much of the world's energy is consumed by cities?
A. one quarter B. one and a half C. more than half D. all
3. Which city is run entirely on green energy?
A. Reykjavik B. Seattle C. Stockholm D. Portland
4. How are the buses powered in Reykjavik?
A. diesel fuel B. hydrogen C. unleaded gasoline D. geothermal
5. How does the grass get cut in the parks of Curitiba?
A. They use push mowers. B. Children stomp on it.
C. People trim it off. D. Sheep graze on it.
6. None of Vancouver is powered by hydroelectricity.
A. True B. False C. No information
7. Portland, Oregon was one of the first US cities to focus on earth-friendly transit.
A. True B. False C. No information

II. Read the following text and answer the questions by choosing the option A, B, C or D.

Nowadays people are more aware that wildlife all over the world is in danger. Many species of animals are threatened., and could easily become *extinct* if we do not make an effort to protect them. There are many reason for *this*. In some cases, animals are hunted for their fur or for other valuable parts of their bodies. Some birds, such as parrots, are caught alive, and sold as pets. For many animals and birds, the problem is that their habitat – the place where they live – is disappearing. More land is used for

farms, for houses or industry, and there are fewer open spaces than there once were. Farmers use powerful chemicals to help them grow better crops, but these chemicals pollute the environment and harm the wildlife. The most successful animals on earth – human beings – will soon be the only ones left, unless we can solve this problem.

1. What does the word **extinct** in line 2 mean?

- A. dead
- B. no longer in existence
- C. not in a place because of illness
- D. suffering from a mental or physical handicap

2. The word **this** in line 3 refers to

- A. wildlife
- B. danger
- C. the fact that people are more aware that wildlife is in danger
- D. the fact that many species of animals could easily become extinct

3. According to the passage, one of the reasons that people hunt animals is

- A. They want their fur or other valuable parts of their bodies
- B. they want to kill them
- C. they consider this a sport
- D. they want to sell them as pets

4. Which of the following is not true?

- A. Human beings are the most successful animals on earth
- B. If we can solve the problem, we will soon be the only ones left
- C. Farmers use chemicals in order to grow better crops
- D. Chemicals pollute the environment

5. What can be the best title of the passage?

- A. Birds are in danger
- B. the threat to the environment
- C. the most successful animals
- D. protect our earth

7. WRITING

I. Rewrite these sentences, using an “if” construction.

Ex: *I will go there. I will buy you a dog.*

→If I go there, I will buy you a dog.

1. He smokes so much, perhaps that’s why he can’t get rid of his cough,

~~✍~~

2. She is very shy, that’s why she doesn’t enjoy parties.

~~✍~~

3. I haven’t the right change so we can’t get tickets from the machine.

- ✂
 4. They speak French to her, not English, so her English doesn't improve.
 ✂
 5. He doesn't work overtime, so he doesn't earn as much as I do.
 ✂
 6. My number isn't in the directory so people don't ring me up.
 ✂
 7. He is very thin perhaps that's why he feels very cold.
 ✂
 8. I'm fat; that's why I can't get through the bathroom's window.
 ✂
 9. He doesn't help me, possible because I never ask him for help.
 ✂

. I can't drive so we can't take the car.

✂

II. Make questions, for the underlined words or phrases.

Ex: I am 13 years old?

I am a student.

→ *How old are you?*

→ *What's your job?/ What do you do?*

1. They sometimes go sailing in the fall.
 ✂
 2. The weather is cool and wet now in London.
 ✂
 3. The Great Wall of China is over 6.000 kilometers long.
 ✂
 4. She walks to school every day.
 ✂
 5. The man in the car is our new teacher.
 ✂
 6. We are having bread and milk for breakfast.
 ✂
 7. There are ten boys and nineteen girls in our class.
 ✂
 8. My brother gets up at a quarter to six.
 ✂

III. Make the first conditional sentences, using the words and phrases given.

1. If/ we/ plant/ more trees/ neighbourhood/ greener.
 ✂
 2. If/ we/ cycle/ school/ every day/ we/ keep/ air/ clean and fresh.
 ✂

3. If/ we/ keep/ hunt/ animals/ they/ disappear/ soon.

~~/~~

4. If/ we/ cut down/ all/ trees/ there/ floods.

~~/~~

5.If/ we/ use/ buses /we/ reduce/ pollution.

~~/~~

IV. Write conditional sentences from these statements.

1. We will plant more trees. The air will be fresher.

If

2.We will use fewer cars. We will reduce pollution.

If

3. We will cycle to school every day. We will keep fitter.

If

4.We will use recycled products. We will save money.

If

5.People will throw rubbish into the right bin. They will keep the environment clean.

If

6.We will turn off the tap when brushing the teeth. We will save a lot of water.

If

7.People will travel more by public transport. The harmful gases in big cities will be reduced.

If

8.We will start at 6.00. We will arrive there before noon.

If

9.The boy eats so many green apples. He will be ill.

If

10.We will use reusable bags for shopping. We will reduce waste.

If

=====

ANSWER KEYS

1. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.

1. C	11.A	21.B	31.C	41.C
2. A	12.C	22.C	32.D	42.A
3. D	13.D	23.B	33.C	43.A
4. A	14.D	24.A	34.B	44.D
5. C	15.B	25.A	35.A	45.D
6. D	16.C	26.A	36.B	46.A
7. A	17.A	27.A	37.D	47.D
8. B	18.B	28.C	38.C	48.B
9. A	19.D	29.D	39.A	49.A
10. D	20.B	30.A	40.B	50.C

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.D	4.A	7.B	10.A	13.D
2.C	5.D	8.B	11.A	14.D
3.B	6.C	9.D	12.A	15.D

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences

1.A	11.B	21.A	31.D	41.D
2.C	12.A	22.A	32.A	42.B
3.A	13.D	23.B	33.C	43.C

4.C	14.B	24.D	34.A	44.C
5.C	15.C	25.B	35.D	45.A
6.A	16.B	26.A	36.B	46.B
7.D	17.D	27.C	37.A	47.C
8.B	18.B	28.B	38.A	48.A
9.A	19.B	29.C	39.A	49.C
10.B	20.C	30.B	40.C	50.D

③. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. to make	6. best	11. breathing	16. arrival
2. environmental	7. architectures	12.intelligently	17. excited
3. deforestation	8. heat	13.engine	18.appearance
4. reusable	9. fit	14. pollutants	19.entrance
5. disappearance	10. suitable	15.creating	20.lucky

④. VERB FORM

I. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

1. will give	2. stand	3. eats	4. will telephone	5. will arrest
6. reads	7. will steal	8. doesn't open	9. washes	10. needs

II. Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box in the correct form with "will".

1. will live	2. will drive	3. will wear	4. will do	5. will grow
6. will be	7. will speak	8. will win	9. will listen	10. will go

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. will stay	6. is - won't go
2. has	7. will save - don't waste
3. doesn't rain	8. will happen – keep
4. recycles - won't produce	9. don't stop - will endanger
5. don't water - will die	10.dump - won't be

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. won't be	2. have studied	3. did you buy	4. is raining
5. recycle - will save	6. is organising	7. throwing	8. to use

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts A, B, C or D of each sentence.

1.B	6.D	11.C	16.A
2.C	7.A	12.B	17.C
3.D	8.A	13.C	18.C
4.D	9.B	14.A	19.D
5.C	10.D	15.C	20.A

II. Find and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. on → in	6. on → off
2. two → second	7. saved → save
3. does → to do	8. start → starts
4. reuses → reuse	9. make → made
5. turned off → turn off	10. buying → buy

6. READING

I. Put a word/ phrase from the box in each gap to complete the following passage

1. pick up	2. even	3. hillsides	4. little
5. hold	6. help	7. thick	8. After

II. Read the passage then choose the correct answers.

1.C	2.C	3.A	4.B	5.D	6.B	7.A
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

III. Read the following text and answer the questions by choosing the option A, B, C or D.

1.B	2.D	3.A	4.B	5.B
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

7. WRITING

I. Rewrite these sentences, using an "if" construction.

- 1.If he doesn't smoke so much, he can get rid of his cough.
- 2.If she isn't very shy, she will enjoy parties.
- 3.If I have the right change, we can get tickets from the machine.
- 4.If they speak English to her, her English will improve.
- 5.If he works overtime, he will earn as much as I do.
- 6.If my number is in the directory, people will ring me up.

- 7.If he isn't very thin, he won't feel very cold.
- 8.If I'm not fat, I can get through the bathroom's window.
- 9.If I ask him for help, he will help me.
- 10.If I can drive, we can take the car.

II. Make questions, for the underlined words or phrases.

- 1.What do they sometimes do in the fall?
- 2.What is the weather like now in London?
- 3.How long is the Great Wall of China?
- 4.How does she go to school every day?
- 5.Who is the man in the car?
- 6.What are you having for breakfast?
- 7.How many boys and girls are there in your class?
- 8.What time does your brother get up?

III. Make the first conditional sentences, using the words and phrases given.

1. If we plant more trees, our neighbourhood will be greener.
2. If we cycle to school every day, we will keep the air clean and fresh.
3. If we keep hunting animals, they will disappear soon.
4. If we cut down all the trees, there will be floods.
5. If we use buses, we will reduce pollution.

IV. Write conditional sentences from these statements.

1. If we will plant more trees, the air will be fresher.
2. If we use fewer cars, we will reduce pollution.
3. If we cycle to school every day, we will keep fitter.
4. If we use recycled products, we will save money.
5. If people throw rubbish into the right bin, they will keep the environment clean.
6. If we turn off the tap when brushing the teeth, we will save a lot of water.
7. If we travel more by public transport, the harmful gases in big cities will be reduced.
8. If we start at 6.00, we will arrive there before noon.
9. If the boy eats so many green apples, he will be ill.
10. If we use reusable bags for shopping, we will reduce waste.

=====

A. TỪ VỰNG:

- play football /pleɪ 'fʊt.bɔːl/ : chơi bóng đá
- sing a song /sɪŋ eɪ /sɔŋ/: hát một bài hát
- teaching robot /'tiː.tʃɪŋ 'roʊ.bɑːt/: người máy dạy học
- worker robot /'wɜːr.kər 'roʊ.bɑːt/: người máy công nhân
- doctor robot /'dɒk.tər/: người máy bác sĩ
- home robot /hoʊm 'roʊ.bɑːt/: người máy gia đình
- laundry /'lɑːn.dri/ (n): giặt ủi
- make the bed /meɪk ðə bed/: dọn giường
- cut the hedge /kʌt ðə hedʒ/: cắt tỉa hàng rào
- do the dishes /du ðə dɪʃ.ez/: rửa chén
- (good/bad) habits /'hæb.ɪt/: thói quen (tốt /xấu)
- go to the pictures/the movies : đi xem tranh/ đi xem phim
- there's a lot to do : có nhiều việc cần phải làm
- go out /ɡoʊ aʊt/: đi ra ngoài, đi chơi
- go/come to town: đi ra thành phố
- gardening /'ɡɑːr.dən.ɪŋ/ (n): công việc làm vườn
- guard /ɡɑːrd/ (v) canh giữ, canh gác
- laundry /'lɑːn.dri/ (n): quần áo cần phải giặt
- lift /lɪft/ (v): nâng lên, nhắc lên, giơ lên
- minor /'maɪ.nər/ (adj): nhỏ, không quan trọng
- opinion /ə'pɪn yən/ (n): ý kiến, quan điểm
- planet /'plæn.ɪt/ (n): hành tinh
- recognize /'rek.əɡ.naɪz/ (v): nhận ra
- robot /'roʊ.bɑːt/ (n): người máy
- role /roʊl/ (n): vai trò

- space station /speɪs ˌsteɪʃən/ (n): trạm vũ trụ
- type /taɪp/ (n): kiểu, loại
- water /'wɔːtər/ (v): tưới, tưới nước

B. NGỮ PHÁP:

I. COULD FOR PAST ABILITY

(CÁCH SỬ DỤNG "COULD" TRONG TIẾNG ANH)

"Could" dịch sang tiếng Việt mang nghĩa là "có thể", tuy nhiên, người Anh lại sử dụng nó ở nhiều trường hợp khác nhau.

1. Cách sử dụng Could trong tiếng anh

a. "Could" được dùng để xin phép

Ví dụ: Could I borrow your motorcycle for 2 hours?

(Tôi có thể mượn xe máy của bạn trong 2 tiếng đồng hồ không?)

b. Could được dùng để đưa ra một yêu cầu

Ví dụ: Could you turn the light off? *(Bạn có thể tắt đèn không?)*

c. Could được dùng để đưa ra một lời đề nghị

Ví dụ: We could go out for dinner tonight *(Chúng ta có thể ra ngoài ăn tối nay)*

d. Could được dùng để nói khả năng trong quá khứ

Ví dụ: She could swim at the age of 7. *(Cô ấy có thể bơi khi mới lên 7.)*

2. Công thức:

Khẳng định:	S + could + V-infinitive
Phủ định:	S + could not/couldn't + V-infinitive
Câu hỏi :	Could + S + V-infinitive?
Câu trả lời ngắn	Yes, S+ could. No, S+ couldn't.

II. "WILL BE ABLE TO" FOR FUTURE ABILITY

(CÁCH SỬ DỤNG WILL BE ABLE TO TRONG TƯƠNG LAI)

- Chúng ta sử dụng **WILL BE ABLE TO** để nói về khả năng trong tương lai.

Công thức:

(+) S + **will be able to** + V-infinitive

Ví dụ: She will be able to ride a bike next year. (Cô ấy có thể sẽ biết đi xe đạp vào năm tới.)

(-) S + **will not/ won't be able to** + V-infinitive

Ví dụ: He won't be able to read or write until he is 6. (Cậu ấy có thể sẽ không biết đọc hay viết cho đến khi 6 tuổi.)

(?)	Will + S + be able to + V-infinitive?
Trả lời:	Yes, S + will.
	No, S + won't.

Ví dụ: Will robots be able to talk to people in the future?

(Robots có thể sẽ nói chuyện được với con người trong tương lai không?)

C. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG:

1. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. leav <u>e</u> s | B. arriv <u>e</u> s | C. finish <u>e</u> s | D. go <u>e</u> s |
| 2. A. bread | B. clea <u>n</u> | C. mea <u>l</u> | D. tea |
| 3. A. or <u>a</u> nge | B. po <u>s</u> t | C. bo <u>d</u> y | D. co <u>p</u> y |
| 4. A. wea <u>k</u> | B. hea <u>d</u> | C. hea <u>v</u> y | D. breakfa <u>s</u> t |
| 5. A. la <u>m</u> p | B. ta <u>b</u> le | C. fa <u>m</u> ily | D. ba <u>g</u> |
| 6. A. citad <u>e</u> l | B. vaca <u>t</u> ion | C. destina <u>t</u> ion | D. lemonad <u>e</u> |
| 7. A. teach <u>e</u> rs | B. docto <u>r</u> s | C. studen <u>t</u> s | D. work <u>e</u> rs |
| 8. A. acc <u>i</u> dent | B. socce <u>r</u> | C. cl <u>i</u> nic | D. ca <u>m</u> era |
| 9. A. mou <u>t</u> h | B. weath <u>e</u> r | C. th <u>i</u> ck | D. th <u>r</u> ow |
| 10. A. languag <u>e</u> | B. engineer | C. sausage | D. joggi <u>n</u> g |
| 11. A. rul <u>e</u> rs | B. penc <u>i</u> ls | C. book <u>s</u> | D. bag <u>s</u> |
| 12. A. th <u>a</u> nk | B. th <u>a</u> t | C. th <u>i</u> s | D. th <u>o</u> se |
| 13. A. abo <u>v</u> e | B. glo <u>v</u> e | C. lo <u>v</u> e | D. mo <u>v</u> e |
| 14. A. ha <u>s</u> | B. na <u>m</u> e | C. fa <u>m</u> ily | D. la <u>m</u> p |
| 15. A. u <u>s</u> e | B. pup <u>i</u> l | C. nu <u>m</u> ber | D. mu <u>s</u> ic |
| 16. A. ci <u>t</u> y | B. fi <u>n</u> e | C. ki <u>n</u> d | D. li <u>k</u> e |
| 17. A. bot <u>t</u> le | B. jo <u>b</u> | C. mo <u>v</u> ie | D. cho <u>c</u> olate |
| 18. A. clim <u>b</u> | B. be <u>d</u> | C. cl <u>u</u> b | D. be <u>n</u> ch |

19. A. <u>read</u>	B. <u>teacher</u>	C. <u>eat</u>	D. <u>ahead</u>
20. A. <u>question</u>	B. <u>nation</u>	C. <u>station</u>	D. <u>information</u>
21. A. <u>now</u>	B. <u>down</u>	C. <u>show</u>	D. <u>cow</u>
22. A. <u>young</u>	B. <u>ground</u>	C. <u>cloud</u>	D. <u>couch</u>
23. A. <u>toy</u>	B. <u>join</u>	C. <u>voice</u>	D. <u>tortoise</u>
24. A. <u>could</u>	B. <u>count</u>	C. <u>town</u>	D. <u>found</u>
25. A. <u>slow</u>	B. <u>flower</u>	C. <u>know</u>	D. <u>owl</u>
26. A. <u>robot</u>	B. <u>role</u>	C. <u>coffee</u>	D. <u>comb</u>
27. A. <u>minor</u>	B. <u>simple</u>	C. <u>recognise</u>	D. <u>climb</u>
28. A. <u>planet</u>	B. <u>station</u>	C. <u>space</u>	D. <u>face</u>
29. A. <u>dressed</u>	B. <u>stepped</u>	C. <u>talked</u>	D. <u>played</u>
30. A. <u>shout</u>	B. <u>could</u>	C. <u>house</u>	D. <u>down</u>
31. A. <u>natural</u>	B. <u>solar</u>	C. <u>planet</u>	D. <u>fact</u>
32. A. <u>window</u>	B. <u>show</u>	C. <u>grow</u>	D. <u>allow</u>
33. A. <u>think</u>	B. <u>bath</u>	C. <u>clothes</u>	D. <u>through</u>
34. A. <u>pollute</u>	B. <u>reduce</u>	C. <u>reuse</u>	D. <u>future</u>
35. A. <u>laundry</u>	B. <u>draw</u>	C. <u>water</u>	D. <u>laugh</u>
36. A. <u>cleaned</u>	B. <u>caused</u>	C. <u>decided</u>	D. <u>studied</u>
37. A. <u>chemist</u>	B. <u>cheap</u>	C. <u>chair</u>	D. <u>child</u>
38. A. <u>fashion</u>	B. <u>nature</u>	C. <u>planet</u>	D. <u>sand</u>
39. A. <u>boxes</u>	B. <u>watches</u>	C. <u>glasses</u>	D. <u>loves</u>
40. A. <u>celebrate</u>	B. <u>comic</u>	C. <u>city</u>	D. <u>exciting</u>
41. A. <u>bicycle</u>	B. <u>exciting</u>	C. <u>favourite</u>	D. <u>widely</u>
42. A. <u>farther</u>	B. <u>earth</u>	C. <u>both</u>	D. <u>marathon</u>
43. A. <u>fear</u>	B. <u>repeat</u>	C. <u>idea</u>	D. <u>really</u>
44. A. <u>polluted</u>	B. <u>prepared</u>	C. <u>recycled</u>	D. <u>watered</u>
45. A. <u>rubbish</u>	B. <u>reduce</u>	C. <u>future</u>	D. <u>reusable</u>
46. A. <u>hear</u>	B. <u>clear</u>	C. <u>bear</u>	D. <u>fear</u>
47. A. <u>surround</u>	B. <u>bought</u>	C. <u>about</u>	D. <u>ground</u>
48. A. <u>wireless</u>	B. <u>environment</u>	C. <u>bring</u>	D. <u>design</u>
49. A. <u>laughed</u>	B. <u>worked</u>	C. <u>hoped</u>	D. <u>completed</u>
50. A. <u>image</u>	B. <u>manage</u>	C. <u>shortage</u>	D. <u>strange</u>

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1. A. distance	B. unhappy	C. different	D. family
2. A. practice	B. classmate	C. complete	D. answer
3. A. important	B. partner	C. dialogue	D. pretty
4. A. question	B. information	C. invitation	D. population
5. A. energy	B. household	C. student	D. appliance

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 6. A. surprise | B. sugar | C. profession | D. success |
| 7. A. advance | B. around | C. industry | D. imperial |
| 8. A. natural | B. national | C. literature | D. suggestion |
| 9. A. charming | B. champagne | C. children | D. charity |
| 10. A. recognition | B. temple | C. tablet | D. emperor |
| 11. A. minor | B. simple | C. human | D. agree |
| 12. A. important | B. recognize | C. emotion | D. computer |
| 13. A. useful | B. laundry | C. express | D. nothing |
| 14. A. expression | B. personal | C. literature | D. synthesis |
| 15. A. station | B. improve | C. mobile | D. robot |

2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- I do not agree _____ the idea that robots will be useful to us in the future.
A. with B. in C. on D. by
- There were some amazing robots _____ the international robot show.
A. on B. at C. for D. of
- _____ robots replace teachers in the classroom within the next ten years?
A. Do B. Could C. Are D. Will
- In five years, some robots will be able to speak with human _____.
A. life B. body C. voice D. way
- In the past, robots had a _____ role, but they will play a very important role in the future.
A. useful B. minor C. complicated D. dangerous
- Will some robots be _____ humans?
A. as intelligent as B. more intelligent C. more intelligent as D. most intelligent than
- _____ can help children improve their basic learning skills.
A. Home robots B. Doctor robots C. Worker robots D. Teaching robots
- _____ robots take our jobs, what will humans do all day?
A. When B. Whether C. If D. Although
- It was so noisy that we _____ hear ourselves speak.
A. can B. mustn't C. could D. couldn't
- 'Some experts say robots will be smarter than humans within two decades.'
'_____ A robot is just a machine, I think.'
A. Not for me. B. I totally disagree. C. Never mind D. I agree
- My father is controlling a robot to cut the green _____ in the garden while my mother is doing the dishes in the kitchen.

A. paper B. fence C. coin D. hedge

12. You should have a good habit of _____ the bed after you wake up every morning.

A. doing B. making C. putting D. sticking

13. I don't _____ why he's trying to do everything on his own. He should learn how to listen to people's advice.

A. think B. find C. understand D. recognise

14. I can't _____ this big cupboard. I need to ask for some help to move it into my kitchen.

A. lift B. throw C. show D. hold

15. I think robots will _____ the house very carefully and stop someone trying to break into there.

A. share B. shout C. guard D. make

16. We are interested _____ watching modern home robots in the exhibition.

A. in B. about C. on D. of

17. They can see a lot of _____ of robots such as teaching robots, doctor robots or space robots when they come to the robot centre.

A. buildings B. roles C. things D. types

18. Some people are afraid that robots with a lot of _____ will be able to be used for bad purposes.

A. energy B. power C. activities D. work

19. My brother _____ draw beautiful pictures when he studied at primary school.

A. should B. could C. can D. would

20. She _____ speak English fluently two years ago. But now she _____ communicate with foreigners confidently thanks to her English teacher.

A. can't/ could B. couldn't/can't C. couldn't/can D. can't/ couldn't

21. Five years ago he ride a bicycle but now he _____.

A. couldn't/can B. shouldn't/can C. can't/should D. can/couldn't

22. They think robots _____ help the police to look for victims in natural disasters in the coming time thanks to the development of technology.

A. can be able to B. should be able to

C. will be able D. must be able to

23. He thinks robot teachers _____ replace the role of teachers completely in the future. They _____ support teachers to teach their students in modern classes.

A. will be able to/just won't be able to

B. won't be able to/ just will be able to

C. will be able to/just will be able to

D. won't be able to/ will just be able to

24. Most people _____ afford to buy an expensive robot now. But in the future, I think a large number of people _____ have one at least in their home.

A. won't/ will be able to B. can't/ will be able to

- C. could/ can't D. can/ won't be able to
25. She ____sing many songs very well, so I think she_____ follow any other jobs apart from becoming a singer in the future.
- A. should/will B. mustn't/won't
- C. can/won't D. could/will
26. _____you hear the fireworks from your house last night?
- A. Can't B. Could C. Can D. Will
27. Do you think you _____ write that report by Tuesday? I know you're very busy.
- A. have been able to B. couldn't
- C. will be able to D. could
28. I _____touch my toes. See!
- A. can B. will be able to C. could D. can't
29. I ____spend another moment in that restaurant. It was too noisy.
- A. can't B. have been able to
- C. can D. couldn't
30. I _____ never seem to get the temperature right
- A. can't B. to be able to C. can D. could
31. _____ play professionally tennis, you must be extremely fit.
- A. To be able to B. Couldn't C. can D. Will you be able
32. _____ you play an instrument?
- A. Couldn't B. Able to C. Can D. Could
33. I'm afraid I _____attend the meeting, I'm on business in Japan.
- A. will be able to B. won't be able to C. can D. would
34. _____ you have brought it to me at work?
- A. Couldn't B. Could C. Cannot D. Will be able to
35. They _____ save the men from the sinking ship.
- A. was able to B. could to C. are able D. were able to
36. Robots _____ lift heavy things many years ago.
- A. can B. could C. couldn't D. are able to
37. _____robots be able to talk to us in the future?
- A. Can B. Do C. Will D. Could
38. When she is 30, she will be able _____ a famous artist.
- A. become B. to become C. becomes D. becoming
39. _____you swim when you were a child?
- A. Can B. Will C. Could D. Do
40. _____robots can build space stations on the planets.
- A. Space B. Doctor C. Workers D. Home
41. Robots can _____ our houses when we are away.

- A. see B. guard C. look at D. look
42. In the future, robots will be able to do more_____ things for us.
A. easy B. harder C. complicated D. much difficult
43. I don't agree you that robots will be able to write a letter to an English friend.
A. of B. about C. to D. with
44. They will be very useful because they will be able to do_____ everything for us.
A. most B. most of C. almost D. almost of
55. "Do you think robots can work longer than people getting tired?"
A. but B. with C. without D. of
46. My father always_____ coffee at home instead of going to the coffee shop.
A. do B. does C. make D. makes
47. Robots will be able to the personal computer in the future.
A. do B. replace C. make D. recognise
48. Nowadays robots can't talk to people or play sport, but in the future I think they_____ .
A. can B. could C. will D. do
49. "Will robots be able _____our voices?"
A. to recognise B. recognising C. to recognising D. for recognising
50. Robots can't talk to people or recognise our voices, but scientists are working _____the solution.
A. at B. on C. in D. with

3. WORD FORMS

Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. Robots can help people solve_____ problems such as (COMPLICATE)
discovering the universe or reducing pollution.
2. Robots can do something_____ like looking after children (USE)
in the future.
3. Robots will be_____ to help people in many fields such as (ABILITY)
curing some diseases or teaching languages. They are very
useful for people in the future.
4. It's difficult for him to _____these flying robots (RECOGNITION)
because they are very small.
5. _____, he decided to buy a domestic robot to help him tidy (FINAL)
up his room.
6. He wants to enjoy a(n)_____life with the support of modern (COMFORT)
robots in the future.
7. He showed his_____ to his partner's ideas on their (AGREE)
presentation tomorrow, so they still haven't decided its main
contents.

8. There are two in his office. (SECRETARY)
9. In my _____, there is a park with many trees and flowers. (NEIGHBOR)
10. 71. Why are you _____ late for school? (USUAL)
11. They are learning _____ because they will go to Berlin next year (GERMANY)
12. Mr. Phong made an _____ to see us at two o'clock. (ARRANGE)
13. The tiger wanted to see the farmer's _____. (WISE)
14. In the story, the prince got _____ to a poor girl. (MARRY)
15. Her parents are pleased with her good _____. (BAHAVE)
16. My teacher is proud of my _____ in my study. (IMPROVE)
17. The form must have the _____ of the writer. (SIGN)
18. Our teacher always gives us _____ so that we can work hard. (ENCOURAGE)
19. There is a wide _____ of clothes for you in this summer. (SELECT)
20. Some of my _____ live in the city. (RELATE)

4. VERB FORMS

I. Complete these sentences with “could, couldn’t” or “was, were able to”.

1. A girl fell into the river but fortunately we _____ rescue her.
2. I _____ walk when I was less than a year old.
3. My grandfather _____ walk without any help last night.
4. _____ you understand what he was saying?
5. My grandmother _____ speak Spanish.
6. Suddenly all the lights went out. We _____ see a thing.
7. The computer went wrong, but luckily Emma _____ put it right again.
8. There was a big party last night. You _____ hear the music half a mile away.
9. I learnt to read sheet music as a child. I _____ read it when I was five.
10. People heard warnings about the food, and they _____ move out in time.
11. She wasn't at home when I phoned but I _____ contact her at her office.
12. Mrs Carter _____ put out the fire before the house burnt down.
13. I looked everywhere for the books, but _____ find it.
14. The plane _____ take off at eleven o'clock, after the fog had lifted.
15. Jack was an excellent tennis player. He _____ beat anybody.
16. The car fell into the river. The worker _____ get it out but the driver was dead.
17. I knew the town so I _____ advise him where to go.
18. Despite the arrival of the storm, they _____ finish the football match.
19. After his car crashes, he was so confused that he _____ tell the police who he was or where he was going.

20. I haven't _____ concentrate recently on work. I don't know what it is.

II. Complete the sentences, using "couldn't" and the verbs in the box.

<i>find</i>	<i>finish</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>hear</i>
<i>listen</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>sleep</i>	<i>understand</i>

1. My dad _____ to work because he was ill.
2. John _____ his pen. It wasn't in his school bag.
3. Mary wasn't hungry - she _____ her lunch.
4. I _____ Jane because I don't speak German.
5. We _____ the teacher because the students were very noisy.
6. Tom _____ to music because his CD player was broken.
7. I was very tired but I _____.
8. We _____ tennis because the weather was bad.

III. Complete the first conditional sentences.

1. If we stay at home, we (**miss**) _____ the show.
2. We (**ask**) _____ about it, if you want.
3. If he (**want**) _____ it, we'll buy it.
4. If it (**not/ work**) _____, we'll take it back.
5. They (**not/ go**) _____ on holiday this year, if their friends come to see them.
6. You will be tired tomorrow if you (**not/ go**) _____ to bed early.
7. The boys (**wear**) _____ their new T-shirts tomorrow if it is sunny?
8. The cake (**burn**) _____ if he doesn't turn off the oven.
9. We won't go to the beach tomorrow if it (**rain**) _____.
10. Will you walk to school if the bus (**not/ come**) _____ soon?

IV. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense or form.

1. If we ____ (**not stop**) cutting down so many trees, we'll endanger our oxygen supply.
2. Last year Mr. Johnson _____ (**teach**) us Robotics.
3. My sister is really busy – she _____ (**study**) for the exam.
4. In the future, robots _____ (**do**) things that people can't do or don't want to do.
5. Mark ____ (**be**) to Sa Pa twice. The first time ____ (**be**) more than ten years ago.
6. How often _____ (**you/ do**) household chores? ~ Every day.
7. Twenty years ago, most people around the world _____ (**not know**) what the Internet was.
8. If we dump all sorts of chemicals into rivers, we _____ (**not be able to**) swim in them in the future.

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.

1. If you don't study your mathematics, you can't be able to do the exercises.

- A B C D
2. My niece can read by the time she was four years old.
- A B C D
3. Most ants could lift objects that are ten times heavier than their own bodies.
- A B C D
4. Tom won't be able to working in the shed because he is ill.
- A B C D
5. Bob was in an accident, but he won't be able to remember how he had hurt himself.
- A B C D
6. That's my sister over there. She stands next to the window.
- A B C D
7. Tom can't listen to music because his CD player was broken.
- A B C D
8. We couldn't hear the teacher because the students was very noisy.
- A B C D
9. Robots can work everywhere on the world, including on the seabed or in a volcano.
- A B C D
10. Teaching robots can explain the lessons again or help students on their homework.
- A B C D
11. A robot can builds houses, apartments and offices.
- A B C D
12. Scientists are working on how to invent a intelligent robot.
- A B C D
13. The children can work in groups when they were at school yesterday.
- A B C D
14. Children couldn't stayed at home alone when they were 5 years old.
- A B C D
15. I don't agree of you that a robot will be able to understand what people say.
- A B C D
16. Vy is really excited with her first day at school.
- A B C D
17. There are a living room, three bedrooms, a bathroom and two toilets in my house.
- A B C D
18. I'm going to Hoan Kiem Lake watching fireworks tonight (D).
- A B C D
19. Tom is a talkative student. He never talks in class.
- A B C D
20. There are many good restaurant and amusement parks in our neighborhood
- A B C D

II. There is one mistake in each sentence. Find, and correct the mistakes.

Sentences	Correction
1. If robots will do all of our work, we will have nothing to do.	
2. We couldn't bought any bread because the baker's was closed.	
3. Mona isn't busy today and she could help her mother at home.	
4. Will you able to carry all the shopping back home on your bike?	
5. Could you to ride a bike when you were in the fifth grade?	
6. What do you think of the role of robots in the future?	
7. We will be able to play football because it is raining heavily.	
8. Robots will wake you up every morning and do your breakfast.	
9. I think robots are very useful and they won't be able to do all of our work.	
10. Home robots can cook, make tea, or make the laundry.	

6. READING

I. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

freely used schoolwork more robots transmits health

I have had my robot for 3 years now, and it has helped me enormously with my (1)_____. I can't go to school because I have a (2)_____ condition. So I send my robot to school in my place. The robot (3)_____ information to me in real time and I can ask it to perform a number of functions. It asks and responds to questions from teachers, can move (4)_____ around the school, and it even interacts with my classmates. I am really happy with it and my grades have improved dramatically (5)_____ I have had it.

Although it was pretty difficult to get (6)_____ to using the robot at first, I realise I am really lucky to have him. I was reading in the paper the other day that a lot of kids want (7)_____ to learn or play with, or help them with their chores. I suppose a lot (8)_____ people will have robots in the future as this type of technology continues to develop at a frightening pace.

II. Choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

Many people (1) _____. attending the international robot show in Ho Chi Minh City today. Young people are very interested (2) _____ home robots. These robots can cook, (3) _____ coffee and tea, make bed, do the washing up clean the floors and toilets and do the gardening.

The children like teaching robots. These robots can help students (4) _____ Teaching robots (5) _____ teach students mathematics, music and other subjects. They can help children speak, write, read and listen English (6) _____ Adults like worker robots (7)_____ they can build houses, big buildings and bridges and they can build

cars, doctor robots can help to find out the diseases for sick people and space robots can build space stations (8) _____ the Moon.

- | | | |
|---------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. A. will be | B. is | C. are |
| 2. A. at | B. in | C. for |
| 3. A. makes | B. make | C. making |
| 4. A. study | B. studies | C. studying |
| 5. A. will | B. can | C. could |
| 6. A. good | B. well | C. quick |
| 7. A. that | B. so | C. because |
| 8. A. in | B. on | C. at |

III. Read the following passage and answer the questions below.

Would you like a robot in your house? It is now generally accepted that in the future robots will take over many of our tasks, especially jobs of a repetitive nature. But it is doubtful if robots will ever be able to do many of the more creative types of work - or indeed if people would want them to. At the home robots would probably be used to do the cleaning, table laying, scrubbing and washing up, but it is considered unlikely so far that they will be used to do cooking - at least not in the near future. Robots in the home might not be creative enough to do the cooking, plan the meals, and so on. They would be used as slaves, thereby freeing people to do more of the things they wanted.

1. What kinds of jobs would a robot take over?

.....

2. What are the types of creative jobs?

.....

3. Can robots do creative work? Why? (Why not?)

.....

4. What would people use robots for?

.....

5. Would you like a robot in your house? Why? (Why not?)

.....

7. WRITING

I. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. Linh/ parents/ proud/ him/ because/ he/ always/ get/ good marks.

~~✎~~

2. We/ very interested/ play/ soccer/ when/ live/ countryside.

~~✎~~

3. I/ not talk/ uncle/ since/ he/ buy/ new house/ city center.

~~✗~~

4. The Browns/ buy/ lot/ food/ because/ they/ go/ have/ party.

~~✗~~

5. It/ only/ small car/ so/ there/ not/ enough room/ all/ us.

~~✗~~

II. Arrange the given words to make the correct sentences.

1. at / tennis / the girls / playing / the moment / are.

~~✗~~

2. always / by / John / goes to / car / school.

~~✗~~

3. do / in / what / you / the afternoon / do?

~~✗~~

4. chatting / the class / are / they / in / now.

~~✗~~

5. doesn't / a new car / buy / sister / my.

~~✗~~

III. Complete the conversations with the phrases in the box, expressing your opinion.

I'm sorry, I don't agree.

I agree with you.

I don't think so.

1. A: Robots make our lives easier and more comfortable.

B: _____

2.A: Robots can work everywhere in the world, including on the seabed or in a volcano.

B: _____

3.A: Teaching robots can explain the lessons again or help students with their homework.

B: _____

4.A: Worker robots will be able to play sports.

B: _____

5.A: Home robots will be able to have conversations with us.

B: _____

IV. Write sentences with "can/ could/ will be able to", using the information about robots in the table.

Past	Now	Future
- (1) lift heavy things	- (4) guard the house	-(8) take care of the house
-(2) make and serve coffee	- (5) understand what we say	- (9) play football
- (3) answer the door	- (6) do the gardening	- (10) design other robots

	-(7) greet people in English	
--	------------------------------	--

1. ✎
2. ✎
3. ✎
4. ✎
5. ✎
6. ✎
7. ✎
8. ✎
9. ✎
10. ✎

=====

ANSWER KEYS

①. PHONETICS

I. Choose the words whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.

1. C	11.C	21.C	31.B	41.C
2. A	12.A	22.A	32.D	42.A
3. B	13.D	23.D	33.C	43.B
4. A	14.B	24.A	34.D	44.A
5. B	15.C	25.B	35.D	45.A
6. A	16.A	26.C	36.C	46.C
7. C	17.C	27.B	37.A	47.B
8. A	18.A	28.A	38.B	48.C
9. B	19.D	29.D	39.D	49.D
10. D	20.A	30.B	40.B	50.A

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is placed differently from that of the other in each group.

1.B	4.A	7.C	10.A	13.C
2.B	5.D	8.D	11.D	14.A
3.A	6.B	9.B	12.B	15.B

②. MULTIPLE CHOICE

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences

1.A	11.D	21.A	31.A	41.B
2.B	12.B	22.C	32.C	42.C

3.D	13.C	23.D	33.B	43.D
4.C	14.A	24.B	34.C	44.C
5.B	15.C	25.C	35.D	45.C
6.A	16.A	26.B	36.B	46.C
7.D	17.B	27.C	37.C	47.B
8.C	18.B	28.A	38.B	48.C
9.D	19.B	29.C	39.C	49.A
10.B	20.C	30.C	40.A	50.B

③. WORD FORM

I. Give the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. complicated	6. comfortable	11. German	16. improvement
2. recognize	7. disagreement	12. arrangement	17. signature
3. useful	8. secretaries	13. wisdom	18. encouragement
4. able	9. neighborhood	14. marriage	19. selection
5. Finally	10. usually	15. behaviors	20. relatives

④. VERB FORM

I. Complete these sentences with “could, couldn’t” or “was, were able to”.

1. were able to	6. couldn’t	11. was able to	16. was able to
2. could	7. was able to	12. was able to	17. could
3. was able to	8. could	13. couldn’t	18. were able to
4. Could	9. could	14. was able to	19. couldn’t/wasn’t able to
5. could	10. were able to	15. could	20. been able to

II. Complete the sentences, using "couldn't" and the verbs in the box.

1. couldn't go	2. couldn't find	3. couldn't finish	4. couldn't understand
5. couldn't hear	6. couldn't listen	7. couldn't sleep	8. couldn't play

III. Complete the first conditional sentences.

1. will miss	2. will ask	3. wants	4. doesn't work	5. won't go
6. don't go	7. Will ...wear	8. will burn	9. rains	10. doesn't come

IV. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense or form.

1. don't stop	2. taught	3. is studying	4. will do
5. has been - was	6. do you do	7. didn't know	8. couldn't play

5. CORRECTION

I. Find the mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.

1.B	6.C	11.C	16.B
2.A	7.A	12.C	17.A
3.B	8.C	13.A	18.C
4.B	9.B	14.A	19.C
5.B	10.D	15.B	20.B

II. There is one mistake in each sentence. Find, and correct the mistakes

1. will do → do	6. of → about
2. bought → buy	7. will → won't
3. could → can	8. do → make
4. able → be able	9. and → but
5. to ride → ride	10. make → do

6. READING

I. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

1. schoolwork	2. health	3. transmits	4. freely
5. since	6. used	7. robots	8. more

II. Choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

1. C	2. B	3. B	4. A
5. B	6. B	7. C	8. B

III. Read the following passage and answer the questions below.

1. Robots will take over many of our tasks, especially jobs of a repetitive nature
2. Doing the cleaning, table laying, scrubbing and washing up
3. Yes, they can.
4. People would use robots for doing any kind of things they wanted
5. Yes, of course. Because it will help us be free at home.

7. WRITING

I. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. Linh's parents are very proud of him because he always gets good marks.
2. We were very interested in playing soccer when we lived in the countryside.

3. I haven't talked to your/ my uncle since he bought a new house in the city center.
4. The Browns have bought a lot of food because they are going to have a party.
5. It is only a small car, so there isn't enough room for all of us.

II. Arrange the given words to make the correct sentences.

1. The girls are playing tennis at the moment.
2. John always goes to school by car.
3. What do you do in the afternoon?
4. They are chatting in the class now.
5. My sister doesn't buy a new car.

III. Complete the conversations with the phrases in the box, expressing your opinion.

1. I agree with you.
2. I agree with you.
3. I agree with you.
4. I'm sorry, I don't agree.
5. I don't think so.

IV. Write sentences with "can/ could/ will be able to", using the information about robots in the table.

1. In the past, robots could lift heavy things.
2. They could make and serve coffee.
3. They could answer the door.
4. Now they can guard the house.
5. They can understand what we say.
6. They can do the gardening.
7. They can also greet people in English.
8. In the future, they will be able to take care of the house.
9. They will be able to play football.
10. They will be able to design even other robots.

=====